ASTON MARTIN

DB9

An invitation to join the AMOC

The sporting spirit of the 1930s exists today in one of the world's most exclusive car clubs. Enthusiasts in nearly 60 countries are united by an interest in iconic cars with an enviable pedigree.

Enjoy the company of like-minded owners in a wide range of activities: social evenings, weekends away or motoring tours.

Something more competitive? AMOC Concours are a benchmark for connoisseurs of fine motorcars.

A need for speed? We organise track days, sprints and hill climbs as well as circuit racing in venues such as Silverstone, Goodwood and Lime Rock in the USA.







Mirroring Club activity, the Aston Martin Heritage Trust is an educational charity dedicated to the history of the marque from the earliest days almost a century ago. It shares the magnificent 15thC Oxfordshire barn which is the international headquarters, museum and archive. Why not log onto our website to discover more about these unique organisations, and enjoy a hearty welcome from us all.

The Aston Martin Owners Club

Drayton St. Leonard, Wallingford, Oxford,
England, OX10 7BG

Telephone: +44 (0) 1865 400 400
Facsimile: +44 (0) 1865 400 200
E-Mail: hqstaff@amoc.org
Website: www.amoc.org







Owner's Guidebook

1 ..... Introduction
2 ..... Vehicle Security
3 ..... Before Driving
4 ..... Controls
5 ..... Driving
6 ..... Convertible Roof (Volante)
7 ..... Climate Control
8 ..... Audio
9 ..... Hands-Free Phone
10 ..... Satellite Navigation
11 ..... Maintenance
12 ..... Specifications
A ..... Service
B ..... Assistance
C ..... Warranty
D ..... Dealer Directory
E ..... Alphabetical Index

Whilst every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of the particulars contained in this Owner's Guide, neither the manufacturer nor the Dealer, by whom this Owner's Guide is supplied, shall in any circumstances be held responsible for any inaccuracy or the consequences thereof.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or other means without prior written permission from Aston Martin Lagonda Limited.

The manufacturer reserves the right to vary specifications without notice in accordance with its policy of continual product improvement.

Produced by the Technical Publications Department
ASTON MARTIN LAGONDA LIMITED
Banbury Road,
Gaydon,
WARWICK
Warwickshire,
CV35 0DB,
England

Telephone: (+44) 01926 644644
Fax: (+44) 01926 644733

Issue 8 – March 2008
Part Number – 9G43-19A321-AA

Introduction

Contents

Welcome 1.6
Component Location 1.7
Vehicle Identification 1.7
Data Recording 1.8
Reporting Safety Defects 1.8
Vehicle Provenance 1.9

Welcome

to your new Aston Martin.

This Owner's Guide, along with other publications included in your literature pack, provides information which will enhance your pleasure from owning and driving your Aston Martin.

This Owner's Guide has been designed to explain the vehicle's operation and to make the control of it's systems easy to understand and operate.

All new owner's are recommended to carefully study the contents of this Owner's Guide prior to driving.

This Owner's Guide forms part of the essential vehicle equipment for homologation purposes and must remain with the vehicle at all times.

Quick Reference Guide

A summary of the more regular in-vehicle operations can be found in the Quick Reference Guide. This useful guide can be found in the Armrest Cubby box.

Warnings, Cautions and Notes

The following Warnings, Cautions and Notes are used within this Owner's Guide to call your attention to specific types of information.

Warnings

⚠ Warning ⚠
Identifies procedures which must be followed precisely to help avoid the risk of personal injury.

Cautions

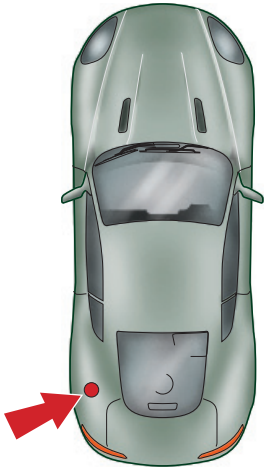
Provided to indicate procedures which must be followed precisely to reduce the possibility of damage to your vehicle.

Notes

Provided to indicate procedures which will help to avoid difficulties in the operation of your vehicle.

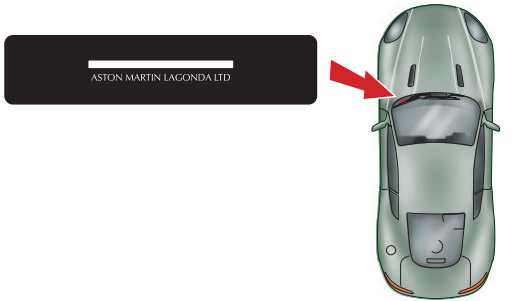
Component Location

All directions for locating components are described as viewed from the driver's seat, i.e. the fuel filler cap indicated on this diagram will be described as 'located at the rear left side of the vehicle'.



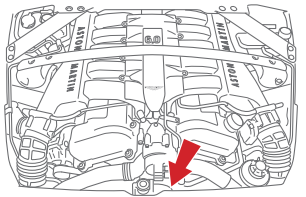
Vehicle Identification

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is shown in the left hand corner of the windscreen.



The Vehicle Identification Plate, attached to the front subframe behind the engine bay front cross member (viewed from above), is model and market dependant:





The vehicle identification number is also stamped into the floorpan in the RH side footwell.

To view the vehicle identification number stamped into the floorpan lift the carpet up, from the front, and then lift the sound deadening material.

Data Recording

Computers in your vehicle are capable of recording detailed data, potentially including but not limited to information such as:

- The use of restraint systems including seat belts by the driver and passengers
- Information about the performance of various systems and modules in the vehicle
- Information related to engine, throttle, steering, brake or other system status

Any of this information could potentially include information regarding how the driver operates the vehicle, potentially including but not limited to information regarding vehicle speed, brake, throttle application or steering input. This information may be stored under regular operation, in a crash or near crash event.

This information may be read out and used by:

- Aston Martin
- Service and repair facilities
- Law enforcement or government agencies
- Others who may assert a right or obtain your consent to know such information

Reporting Safety Defects

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform your Aston Martin Dealer or the manufacturers Service Operations Department at the address shown.

Aston Martin Lagonda Limited
Service Operations Department
Banbury Road
Gaydon
WARWICK
CV35 0DB
England

Telephone:

(International) ++44 1926 644700
(United Kingdom) 01926 644700
Facsimile (++44) 1926 644733

Vehicle Provenance

Model:

e.g. Manual, Automatic

Colour:

Body Exterior	Interior Trim/ Piping	Interior Veneers

Vehicle Identification Number:

As on the VIN plate

First Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Second Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Third Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Fourth Owner:

Selling Dealer:

Delivery Date:

Fifth Owner: _____

Selling Dealer: _____

Delivery Date: _____

Sixth Owner: _____

Selling Dealer: _____

Delivery Date: _____

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

Vehicle Security

Contents

Introduction 2.2
Aston Martin Tracking 2.2
Emotion Control Unit 2.3
Unlocking the Vehicle 2.6
Opening the Doors 2.7
Locking the Vehicle 2.8
Emergency Key 2.8
Master Lock Switch 2.9
Fuel Flap Release 2.10
Boot Lid 2.10
Boot Emergency Release 2.11
Deadlocking 2.12
Drive-Away Locking 2.12
Approach Lighting 2.12
Homesafe 2.13
Alarm Cycle 2.13
Alarm Options 2.13
Reduced Guard 2.14
Passive Anti-Theft System 2.14
Garage Door Opener (Option) 2.15
Personalisation 2.20
Menu 2.22

Introduction

This vehicle is protected by an electronic security system. Two levels of alarm system are available:

- Standard
- High specification (option) – includes an interior movement sensor and a tilt sensor

Vehicle protection is enhanced by a Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) which provides engine immobilisation if the wrong vehicle key is used.

The total vehicle security system includes:

- Remote arming and disarming
- Perimeter sensing
- Remote door, boot, fuel flap release lock and unlock
- A guard reduction mode
- Alarm siren with battery backup (in markets where audible sirens are permitted)
- Random code encryption to prevent electronic scanning or grabbing of the vehicle key identity code
- Interior movement sensor (high specification alarm system only)
- Tilt sensor (high specification alarm system only)
- Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) (engine immobilisation)

With the vehicle armed, any attempt to forcibly open a door, the boot or the bonnet will result in full alarm activation.

Aston Martin Tracking

(Option (Not Available in all Markets))

(Standard - Mainland UK)

The Aston Martin Tracking system works like an electronic homing device, transmitting a stolen vehicle's location.

The system, which is discretely installed in the vehicle, is an easy-to-use system that provides the following important features:

- Automatically ‘arms’ the security system when the vehicle key is removed and you leave the car
- Detects your presence (using a Driver Recognition tag) and automatically ‘dis-arms’ the system when you return

A convenient storage location for the Driver Recognition tag is provided in the armrest cubby box lid.

- Detects attempts to start the vehicle without you being present
- Detects attempts to tow or move the vehicle
- Detects attempts to tamper with the tracking system or disconnect the vehicle battery
- Transmits silent alarms to the 24-hour monitoring service
- Gives you priority access to police in more than 30 countries
- Meets all insurance requirements

Refer to the Aston Martin Tracking User Guide for operating instructions.

Please consult your Aston Martin Dealer for details and subscription rates.

Do not keep the Aston Martin Tracking User Guide in the vehicle otherwise you will not be able to refer to it if your vehicle is stolen.

Tracking systems place extra demands on vehicle power while active. This will reduce vehicle battery stand-by time (Refer to 'Battery Charge', page 11.24).

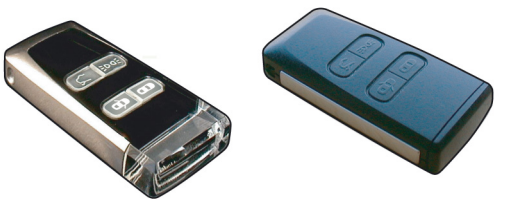
Tag Warning

If the driver recognition tag is not in range of the vehicle tracking system the PATS lamp (Refer to 'PATS Lamp', page 4.6) will continue to illuminate after the vehicle has started. If this happens stop the engine, remove the vehicle key from the Ignition Control and check the location of the recognition tag.

Refer to your Aston Martin Tracking User Guidebook.

Emotion Control Unit

The vehicle is supplied with two vehicle keys[1] (Emotion Control Units), a Glass key and a Spare key. A leather holder is provided to hold the 'in use' vehicle key when not in the Ignition Control.



Keep the spare key in a safe place.

Do not leave a vehicle key in the vehicle when unattended.

If a vehicle key is lost, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

1. Manufactured by STRATTEC. 8D33-70290-BA.

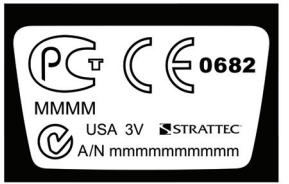
Emergency Key

The emergency key will only lock and unlock the vehicle (Refer to 'Emergency Key', page 2.8).



Low Power Radio Frequency Device Information

The following information is located on the reverse of the vehicle key.



GCC Countries

This device complies with SASO 1322/1997 Low power radio frequency devices. The operation of this device is subject to the following two conditions; 1) The device may not cause harmful interference. 2) Any interference received by the device must be accepted.

Any change or modification which may cause the device to work outside of the permitted limits of the standard could void the user's authority to use the device.

The concerned authorities have the right to inspect the device and in the case of complaints of harmful interference caused by the device, it shall be liable to be forfeited.

Vehicle Key Security Functions

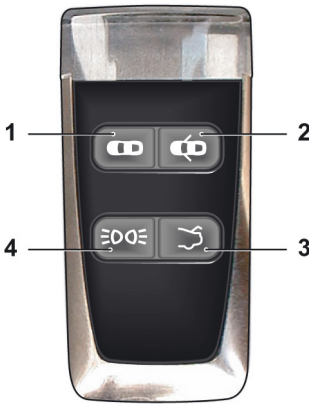
1 ***LOCK -*** Press once for one step vehicle locking and alarm enable (Refer to 'Locking the Vehicle', page 2.8). The seats and door rear view mirror positions are memorised (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).

The vehicle will deadlock after 25 seconds (Refer to 'Deadlocking', page 2.12).

2 ***UNLOCK -*** Press once for one step vehicle unlocking (Refer to 'Unlocking the Vehicle', page 2.6). The seats and door rear view mirrors move to their memorised positions (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).

3 ***BOOT OPEN -*** Press once to enable the boot catch. Press twice, within three seconds, to release the boot catch (Refer to 'Boot Lid', page 2.10).

4 ***APPROACH LIGHT -*** Press to activate the front / rear side lamps and interior lights (Refer to 'Approach Lighting', page 2.12).



Unlocking the Vehicle

Stand within 5 m (16 ft) of the vehicle. Point the vehicle key towards the vehicle and press the button. The direction indicators will flash twice, indicating that the alarm has been deactivated. Both vehicle doors will unlock (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.20).

The boot catch and fuel flap release switch will be enabled.

If the vehicle has been opened using the spare key and the seats / door rear view mirrors have been adjusted, the seats and door rear view mirrors will move to the positions memorised by the key which is being used (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).

For ease of use at night white LEDs are incorporated into the door handles. An LED will illuminate in both door handles when the vehicle is unlocked. A door LED will go out once the door is opened. If a door is not opened the LED's will go out after two minutes.

The vehicle key can be programmed to:

a. Unlock all doors and enable the boot and fuel flap release switches with one press of the button.

b. Unlock the drivers door only with the first press of the button and the rest of the vehicle with a second press.

(Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.20)

The vehicle alarm is disabled on the first press of the button.

As the vehicle is unlocked, the interior lamps will switch ON for five minutes. The lamps will switch OFF 30 seconds after doors are closed or when the vehicle is started.

Unlocking From Inside the Vehicle

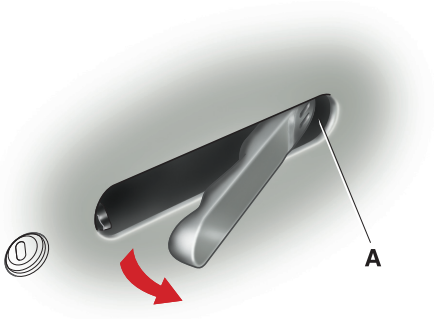
If reduced guard (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.14) was activated before the vehicle was locked, one pull of a door handle will centrally unlock the doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

The vehicle alarm will sound when the door is opened. Press the button on the vehicle key to deactivate at any time during activation (there is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is cancelled).

Opening the Doors

If the reduced guard switch was not activated before locking the vehicle, deadlocking, interior movement (option) and tilt (option) sensors are enabled. Passengers will not be able to unlock a door from the inside (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.14).

Push at point A and grab the emerging door release. Pull the door release to open the door.



For ease of use at night time.

When the vehicle is unlocked white LEDs will illuminate in the door handles (for two minutes or until the door is opened). Press the door handle where the LED illuminates.

If 'Drive-away' locking is active one pull of the door handle will centrally unlock both doors and a second pull will open that door (Refer to 'Drive-Away Locking', page 2.12).

If the door is left open the door puddle lamp will go out after 30 seconds.

Locking the Vehicle

Ensure that both doors, the boot and the bonnet are closed. Stand within 5 m (16 ft.) of the vehicle. Point the vehicle key towards the vehicle and press the button once to lock the doors, disable the boot and fuel flap release switches and set the vehicle alarm.

The vehicle will arm and deadlock after 25 seconds (Refer to 'Deadlocking', page 2.12).

The direction indicators will flash once as the alarm is activated (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.20).

The seats and door rear view mirror positions are memorised and will be recalled the next time the vehicle is opened using the same vehicle key (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).

If the vehicle is locked with the boot open, the vehicle will lock and arm but deadlocking, tilt (option) and interior movement (option) sensors will not activate. Close the boot lid to activate the complete alarm system.

Do not leave the vehicle key in the boot. If the boot is closed there will be no access to the contents of the boot.

If passengers are to remain in the vehicle after it has been locked, reduced guard must be activated before locking. This enables passengers to open the doors from inside the vehicle (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.14).

Automatic Re-locking

If the vehicle is locked and then unlocked but a door or the boot is not opened within two minutes, then the vehicle will automatically lock and arm again.

Emergency Key

Locking Using the Emergency Key

Insert the emergency key in the door lock and rotate fully towards the front of the vehicle, then release. This will centrally lock the vehicle, disable the boot and fuel flap release switches - **The alarm will not be activated**.

Unlocking Using the Emergency Key

Insert the emergency key in the door lock and rotate fully towards the rear of the vehicle, then release. this will centrally unlock the vehicle, enable the boot and fuel flap release switches.

If unlocking a door using the emergency key after the vehicle was armed, the alarm will activate. To deactivate the alarm insert the vehicle key (even if the vehicle key has lost all power) into the Ignition Control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON).

The front seats and door rear view mirrors will not move to a preset position if the vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key.

Master Lock Switch

Doors, fuel flap and boot release switches may be locked / unlocked by using the master lock switch. Press the switch to lock. Pull back on the switch to unlock.

One pull back on the master lock switch will also illuminate the LED in the door handles (for 10 seconds or until the door is opened). This may aid access for a passenger at night time.

If the vehicle is locked using the master lock switch, one pull of a door handle will centrally unlock the doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.



In the event of a vehicle accident the doors will automatically unlock.

The master lock switch will not operate if the vehicle has been locked from the outside.

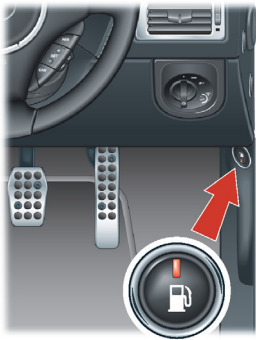
Operation of the master lock switch will override 'Drive away locking'.

(Refer to 'Deadlocking', page 2.12).

Fuel Flap Release

Push the fuel flap release switch to open the fuel flap.

The fuel flap release is disabled when the vehicle is locked or when the vehicle moves off.

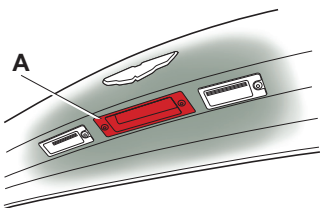


Boot Lid

Boot Lid Release

If the vehicle is locked and armed the alarm system will be disabled and the direction indicators will flash twice (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.20). The doors will remain locked.

If the button on the vehicle key is pressed **once** the boot release catch will be enabled. With the boot catch enabled press the boot switch (A) and raise the lid.

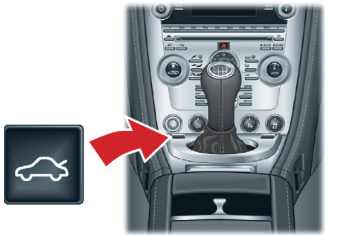


If the button on the vehicle key is pressed **twice** (within three seconds) the boot catch will enable and release the boot lid. Lift the lid.

Boot Lid Release Switch

Pull back on the boot release switch.

The boot catch will release. Lift the lid.



Closing the Boot Lid

Lower the boot lid and ensure the boot catch engages.

The boot will not be locked.

Always ensure the boot is securely closed after use. The boot interior lamps will remain ON for 30 minutes if the boot lid is left partially open.

Lock the boot by pressing the button on the vehicle key. The direction indicators will flash once as the alarm is activated (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.20).

Leaving the Boot Open While the Vehicle is Locked

To use the battery conditioner (Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 11.25) the boot has to be left open (boot lid down but not latched).

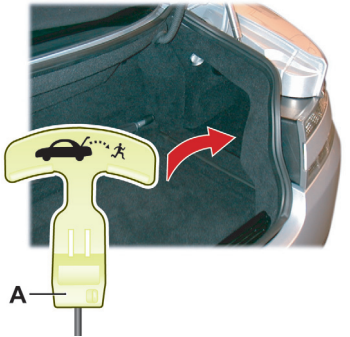
If the vehicle is locked while the boot is open, the vehicle will lock and arm (deadlocking, tilt (option) and interior movement (option) sensors will not activate).

If the boot is then closed (latched) deadlocking, tilt (option) and interior movement (option) sensors will activate and the whole vehicle will be locked and armed.

Do not leave the vehicle key in the boot. If the boot lid is closed there will be no access to the contents of the boot.

Boot Emergency Release

The boot can be opened from inside the boot by pulling the luminous emergency release handle (A).



Deadlocking

The vehicle will automatically deadlock after 25 seconds after arming the vehicle. When the vehicle is deadlocked, the doors cannot be opened from the inside by pulling the interior door handle.

To open the doors activate the vehicle key.

If passengers are to remain in the vehicle after locking, the reduced guard switch must be activated before locking (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.14).

Drive-Away Locking

All Markets Except Japan

Drive-away locking (Auto Lock) is factory set to active (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.20).

Japanese Market Only

Drive-away locking (Auto Lock) is factory set to inactive (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.20).

When drive-away locking is active the central locking system will automatically engage as the vehicle moves off. Both doors and the boot will lock. This function prevents unwanted access to the vehicle when stopped at traffic lights, etc.

One pull of a door handle will centrally unlock both doors, a second pull of the door handle will open that door.

In the event of a vehicle accident the doors will automatically unlock.

Approach Lighting

When approaching the vehicle the side lamps and interior lights can be activated by pressing the ΞDOΞ button on the vehicle key.

The time that the side lamps stay ON is programmable (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.20).

Homesafe

When exiting the vehicle and the vehicle key has been removed, flash the main beam (pull the LH stalk forwards and release without latching), to active Homesafe. The main beam and rear lamps will then remain ON for a determined amount of time and then extinguish. The time that the main beam and rear lamps stay ON is programmable (Refer to 'Personalisation', page 2.20).

If Homesafe has been activated with the master lamp switch at position 3 (headlamps ON), the main beam will remain ON. Ensure the master lamp switch is at position 1 before exiting (Refer to 'Master Lamp Switch', page 4.3).

Alarm Cycle

Full Alarm Activation

A siren will sound for a 25 seconds cycle (ten cycles maximum). The direction indicators flash for five minutes after which the security system returns to the armed state.

Markets where visible alarm signals and audible sirens are permitted.

Doors and boot will remain locked throughout.

The alarm can be deactivated at any time during activation by pressing the button on the vehicle key (there is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is cancelled).

Alarm Options

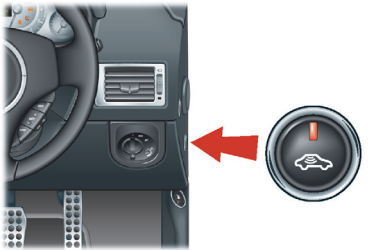
Interior Movement Sensor

When the vehicle is locked and armed the interior movement sensor will sense movement inside the vehicle. If movement is detected it will activate the vehicles alarm system (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.14).

Tilt Sensor

When the vehicle is locked and armed the tilt sensor will sense if the vehicle is tilted i.e., if the vehicle is being raised on a jack. If vehicle tilt is detected it will activate the vehicles alarm system (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.14).

Reduced Guard



When guard reduction is active deadlocking, interior movement (option) and tilt (option) sensors are disabled. This allows passengers to open the doors from the inside by pulling the interior door handle and passengers or animals to be left in the vehicle without activating the security system.

When a door is opened from the inside the vehicle alarm will sound. Press the button on the vehicle key to deactivate at any time during activation (there is approximately a ten second delay before the alarm is cancelled).

If passengers are to remain in the vehicle after it has been locked, reduced guard must be active before locking. This allows passengers to open the doors from inside the vehicle.

With the vehicle key in position '0' or 'I' or within 60 seconds of removing the vehicle key the reduced guard switch can be activated.

The vehicle key must have been released from position 'II' first.

Press 'A' to activate. The switch will show red when reduced guard is active.

Reduced guard remains active until the vehicle key is inserted in the Ignition Control and set to position 'II' (ignition ON).

Passive Anti-Theft System

The Passive Anti-Theft System (PATS) is a fully automatic engine immobiliser.

In the event of the loss of the vehicle key, a duplicate vehicle key can be created and programmed from the spare key by your Aston Martin Dealer.

Starting the Engine

When the alarm system is disarmed and the vehicle key is in the Ignition Control, the PATS controller sends a signal to the vehicle key. The vehicle key must respond with a valid code before engine start will be enabled. If a valid code is received, the ignition system will operate normally.

If the vehicle key code is not received, or is invalid, engine start remains disabled.

PATS Status

The PATS system state is shown by the red lamp on the instrument cluster (A).



Ignition	Action (Valid code)
Position 'II' (ON).	Lamp illuminates for three seconds.
Position '0' / 'I' (OFF).	Lamp will flash.
OFF and vehicle key removed from the Ignition Control.	Lamp will flash for five minutes or one minute after the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key.

Fault Mode

If the status lamp continues flashing when the ignition is switched ON, the vehicle will remain immobilised.

Should this situation arise try switching the ignition OFF then ON. If this is unsuccessful try the spare key. If successful, source a replacement for the faulty vehicle key. If problems persist with the vehicle key, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Garage Door Opener (Option)

The Garage Door Opener (Homelink® Universal Transceiver) operating buttons and transceiver are located in the interior rear view mirror.

The transceiver can be programmed to transmit the radio frequencies of up to three different transmitters used to activate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems, or other radio frequency operated devices.

A full list of radio frequency operated devices can be either obtained via the HomeLink Hot-line or through the HomeLink compatibility list which is provided on the HomeLink website.

For information, or for assistance, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Alternatively contact Homelink directly at www.homelink.com or call the HomeLink Hot-line:

Toll-free: 008000 0466 354 65

or

+49 6838 907-277 (In certain countries difficulties may be experienced trying to reach the toll-free number by some providers).

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not use the transceiver with any garage door opening system that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by safety standards. A garage door opening system which cannot detect an object, signalling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current safety standards. Using a garage door opening system without these features increases risk of serious injury or death.

⚠ Warning ⚠

When programming the transceiver to a garage door opening system, make sure that people, the vehicle and objects are out of the way to prevent potential harm or damage as the gate or garage door will activate during the programming.

Keep the original transmitter for future use or programming procedures if, for example, you purchase a new vehicle.

This device may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter as well as the in-vehicle transceiver.

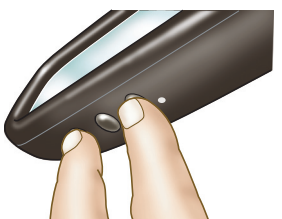
The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Programming

Step 1 erases all programming. It only requires completing if programming Homelink for the first time or when erasing all existing programming. It does not have to be followed to program the other HomeLink buttons.

The HomeLink buttons can be reprogrammed individually but not individually erased. Step 1 must be completed to erase all programming.

1. Press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons, releasing only when the HomeLink LED begins to flash after 20 seconds.



All three buttons are now cleared. The HomeLink system is now in setting mode.

As a security precaution ensure that all programming is erased in the HomeLink system before selling this vehicle.

2. Hold the original remote control of the device to be programmed at a distance of 10-30 cm (4-12 inch) away from the HomeLink transmitter unit keeping the LED in view all the time.

The distance between the remote control and the transmitter unit depends on the system being programmed. You may require several attempts at different distances. Maintain each setting position for at least 15 seconds before trying out another.

3. Using both hands, simultaneously push the remote control button and the desired button (1, 2 or 3).



4. The LED will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the LED flashes rapidly, release both buttons. The rapid flashing light indicates successful programming of the new frequency signal.

Operation

The vehicle should be within the operating range of the gate or garage door opener and the ignition should be switched ON.

The HomeLink system operates the garage door opener (or other device) in exactly the same way as the original remote control.

When you have programmed the HomeLink system, press the appropriate button 1, 2, or 3 on the control panel to activate the garage door opener.



The LED will light up when the button on the control panel is pressed.

For convenience, the original remote control of the device may also be used at any time.

In the case of a standard code, the HomeLink LED is constantly illuminated throughout the transmission process. For use with compatible systems, no further action is necessary.

If HomeLink now does not operate the garage door opener (or other device), this may be because the original remote control has a rolling code feature (Refer to 'Rolling Code Synchronisation', page 2.18).

Rolling Code Synchronisation

Check, by going through the following steps, whether or not the garage door opener (or other device) is equipped with a rolling code feature.

- Look in the garage door opener manual for clarification
- The remote control appears to program HomeLink but HomeLink does not operate the garage door opener
- Press and hold down the programmed HomeLink button
  With a rolling code system, the HomeLink LED flashes quickly for a short time and then stays ON constantly for two seconds. This pattern repeats itself for up to 20 seconds.

If HomeLink was programmed with a rolling code system, then after the end of the programming period it must be synchronised with this system again before it will function properly.

Follow the instructions below for Rolling Code Synchronisation (the procedure will take less time with a second person to help).

The vehicle must be within operating range of the garage door opener and the ignition should be ON. Make sure you comply with the safety instructions even when synchronising the rolling code.

1. Locate the Training button (programming button) on the garage door opener motor head unit. Exact location and colour of the button may vary by gate or garage door opener brand (refer to the operating instructions of the garage door opener 'Training additional remote controls').
2. Press the Training button (programming button) on the garage door opener motor head unit (which will usually activate a 'training' light).

Following step 2, there are typically 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3.

3. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button. Press and release the HomeLink button a second time to complete the training process. (Some garage door openers may require this procedure a third time to complete the training).

The garage door opener should now recognise the HomeLink signal and activate when the HomeLink button is pressed.

The remaining two buttons may now be programmed if this has not previously been done (Refer to 'Programming', page 2.17).

Reprogramming

If a HomeLink button has been programmed to activate a device, and you now wish to use this button to operate a different device, proceed as follows. This procedure will erase the existing programming of the respective HomeLink button.

1. Press the appropriate HomeLink button 1, 2, or 3 which requires reprogrammingand keep holding it for about 20 seconds until the LED starts flashing slowly. Do not release until step 4 has been completed.
2. When the LED begins to flash slowly (after approximately 20 seconds), hold the remote control of the device you wish to train approximately 10-30 cm (4-12 inch) away from the HomeLink transmitter unit - keeping the LED in view.

The distance between the remote control and the HomeLink transmitter unit depends on the system being learned. You may require several attempts at different distances. Maintain each setting position for at least 15 seconds before trying out another.

3. Now activate (press) the remote control and keep it pressed.
4. The HomeLink LED will flash, first slowly and then rapidly. When the LED begins to flash rapidly, release both buttons.

Personalisation

A number of security functions can be personalised. The functions are set by using the Infotainment screen.

1 ***ON/OFF -*** Infotainment centre ON / OFF

2 ***SCREEN -*** Presents options, menus and information.

3 ***TUNING -*** Alternative method for navigating through the menus. Turn left or right to navigate up / down in the menus.

4 ***MENU -*** Opens the main menu.

5 ***ENTER -*** Select in the menu, activate a selection.

6 ***JOYSTICK -*** Navigate up or down in the menus

7 ***BACK -*** Navigate back in the menu, cancel a selection.



Selection

With the ignition ON and the Infotainment centre ON, press ***MENU.*** Select *Car Setting menu...*

From *Car Setting menu...* navigate to the required setting > ***ENTER*** > Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to make a selection > press ***ENTER*** to accept.

Menu

(1)Light settings...
(1)Lock confirm. light
(2)Unlock confirm. light
(3)Approach light duration...
(1)30 / 60 / 90 seconds
(4)Homesafe light duration...
(1)30 / 60 / 90 seconds

(2)Car Settings...
(1)Doors auto lock
(2)Doors unlock...
(1)All doors[1]
(2)Driver door, then all

(3)Information...
(1)VIN number...

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

1. Market Area Dependant.

Before Driving

Contents

Checks Before Driving 3.2
Seat Controls 3.2
Seat Memory Function 3.5
Steering Wheel 3.7
Interior Mirrors 3.8
Door Mirrors 3.8
Restraints System 3.10
Seat Belts 3.12
Airbags 3.16
Child Safety 3.18
Child Seats 3.20
Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) 3.21
Deployable Rollbars (Volante) 3.22
Interior Storage 3.23
Media Devices 3.24
Accessory Sockets 3.25
Ashtray and Cigar Lighter (Option) 3.26
Electric Windows 3.26
Reading Lamps 3.27
Coat Hooks 3.28
Umbrella 3.28

Checks Before Driving

Inspect the vehicle to make sure that everything is according to the information and specifications in this Owner's Guide.

Outside the vehicle:

- Visually check the road wheels, nuts and tyres
- Check that all windows, mirrors and lamps are clear and unobstructed
- Check that the boot, bonnet and fuel filler flap are securely closed
- Check the operation of all lamps

Once in the vehicle:

- Check that the doors are securely closed
- Check that the seat, mirrors and steering wheel adjustments are correct
- Check that all gauges and indicators are reading correctly (Refer to 'Controls', page 4.1)
- Check that the seat backs are in an upright position and that the seat latch is engaged
- Check that all occupants have fastened their seat belts

Seat Controls

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not attempt to adjust the seat whilst driving.

The seats can be adjusted while the vehicle key is in the Ignition Control. Gently insert the vehicle key up to position 'I' (press down until the instrument cluster and Infotainment centre illuminate) and release.

The vehicle key must only be inserted into the Ignition Control with the two indents first, as shown. Attempting to insert the larger end first the key may damage the Ignition Control.



They can also be adjusted:

- Up to six minutes after a door is unlocked and before the vehicle key is inserted into the Ignition Control
- Up to six minutes after the vehicle key is removed from the Ignition Control

If the seat operation times out:

- Place the vehicle key in the Ignition Control
- Close and / or open a door

Seat Controls

The seat adjustment controls are located each side of the centre console (A).



ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

Seat Position

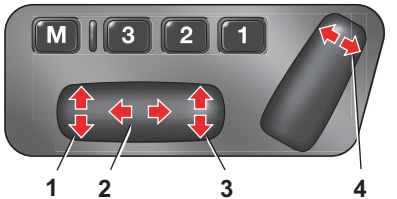
1 Raise or lower the **front** of the seat.

2 Move the seat **forwards** or **rearwards**.

3 Raise or lower the **rear** of the seat.

4 Increase or decrease the **angle of the seat back**.

When making seat adjustments, i.e. moving the seat base rearwards or raising / lowering the seat base, the seat back will motor forwards whenever it approaches trim panels located behind it. If the seat back is tilted backwards the seat base will move forwards if the seat back approaches trim panels.



Seat Comfort

The ignition must be ON before the heated seat and lumbar support can be operated.

5 Press forwards or rearwards to increase or reduce the **lower lumbar support**.

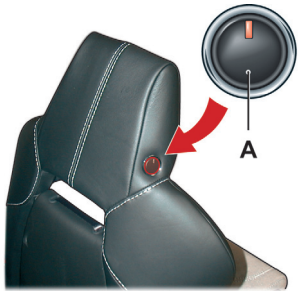
6 Press forwards or rearwards to increase or reduce the **upper lumbar support.**

7 Press to the rear for the **lower heat setting**, press to the front for the **higher heat setting**. A LED shows which heat level is active. To switch OFF press to the centre position (no LED illuminated).

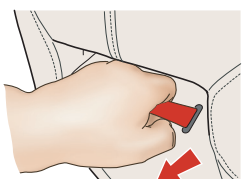


Seat Back Release

Press and hold in button A to release the seat back, once the seat has been moved forward release the button, then manually move the seat back forwards.



In the unlikely event of power failure a manual release strap is provided in the seat back. Pull and hold the strap to release the seat back and then move the seat back forward.



Seat Memory Function

The position of the driver and passenger seats can be memorised and recalled. Three different driving position profiles can be entered in the memory. The memory position of the driver's seat also includes both door rear view mirrors.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Ensure that there is nothing in front of, behind, or under the seat during adjustment.

⚠ Warning ⚠
To avoid injury, ensure that children do not play with the switches.

⚠ Warning ⚠
If the seat accidentally begins to move, press any seat control button to stop the seat.

The Memory function buttons are located in the seat adjustment controls which are located each side of the centre console (A).



Setting a Preset Position

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not attempt to adjust the seat whilst driving.

1. Adjust the seat and the door rear view mirrors to the desired position.
   - Seat Adjustment (Refer to 'Seat Controls', page 3.2).
   - Mirror Adjustment (Refer to 'Door Mirrors', page 3.8).

When making seat adjustments, i.e. moving the seat base rearwards or raising / lowering the seat base, the seat back will motor forwards whenever it approaches trim panels located behind it. If the seat back is tilted backwards the seat base will move forwards if the seat back approaches trim panels.

2. Push both the memory button (M) and the desired setting button (1, 2 or 3) simultaneously, then release, to memorise the configuration.

By repeating these steps and pressing an unused button (1, 2 or 3), a second and third driving position can be stored in the memory.



When making adjustments to a set driving position, reset the new position in the same memory channel. The previous memory is erased when a new driving position is entered.

Recalling a Memorised Position

Once in the seat press and hold button 1, 2 or 3 (depending on which position required) until all movement is stopped. The seat and door mirrors (when adjusting the driver's seat) move to the programmed position. If the button is released all movement will stop, press and hold again to continue movement.

Memory Using the Vehicle Key

When the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key, the driver's seat and both door rear view mirrors will remember their positions. The next time the vehicle is opened using the same vehicle key, the seat and door rear view mirrors will move to the memorised position.

The seats and door rear view mirrors only move if the seats and mirrors have been moved, i.e. the spare vehicle key has been used to open / close the vehicle.

Emergency Stop

If the seat accidentally begins to move, press any seat control button to stop the seat.

Rake and Reach

Rake and Reach are adjusted by using the release lever (A).

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not adjust the steering wheel whilst driving.

Pull the release lever downwards and manoeuvre the steering wheel to the required position.



Hold the steering wheel in the required position and lock it by pulling the release lever up.

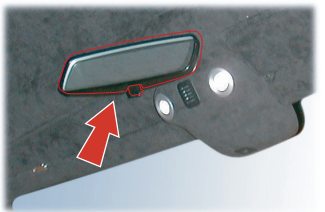
⚠ Warning ⚠
Ensure that the steering column is fully locked in position. The rake and reach release lever must be fully up, in line with the steering column.

Interior Mirrors

Rear View Mirror

Adjust on its ball mounting until a satisfactory rear view is obtained.

Automatic Dimming



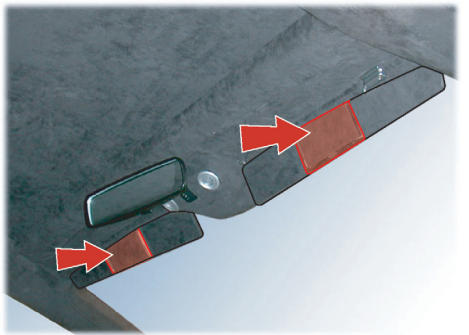
The rear view mirror will dim automatically if the glare from the headlights of following vehicles becomes too bright.

The mirror will return to normal view as unwanted glare reduces to an acceptable level.

If the mirror is dimmed when reverse gear is selected the mirror will revert to normal view.

Vanity Mirror

A vanity mirror is located in each sun visor.

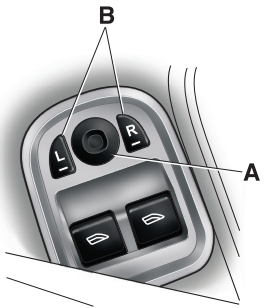


Door Mirrors

The vehicle key must at position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control before the door mirrors can be adjusted.

To adjust the door mirrors select the left or right mirror (B).

An amber LED indicates the active mirror.



Then move the joystick (A) up / down / left / right to adjust the selected mirror.

When the heated rear windscreen is activated the heaters in the door mirrors will activate for 6.5 minutes.

Power Fold Door Mirrors

The Power Fold Mirror function rotates the door mirror assemblies until folded flat against the doors (folded).

Insert the vehicle key to position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control.

Move the mirrors to the folded position by pressing down and releasing both the left and right hand mirror select switches (B) together. The mirrors will motor to the folded position. Repeat to motor the mirrors back to the driving position.

Auto Fold

When this vehicle is locked using the vehicle key the mirrors will automatically fold in flat against the doors.

They return to the driving position once the vehicle key has been inserted into the Ignition Control.

If the mirrors have been folded using the Power Fold Mirror function then the mirrors will remain folded until placed in the driving position using the Power Fold Mirror function again.

Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer to enable / disable this function.

Door mirror vibration can occur if the mirrors have been moved manually (folded / unfolded), either intentionally or accidentally. To reset the linkage operate the power fold function once to fold / unfold the mirrors.

Memory Mirrors

The position of the driver and passenger door mirrors and seats can be memorised and recalled. Details on memory door mirrors can be found in Memory Seats (Refer to 'Seat Memory Function', page 3.5).

Restraints System

The Restraints System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyse different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

A collection of crash sensors provide information to the Restraints Control Module (RCM). During a crash, the RCM may or may not activate the safety belt pre-tensioners and / or either none, one, or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and conditions.

The fact that the pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system.

Rather, it means the system determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices. Front airbags are designed to activate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollovers, side-impacts, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

The system consists of:

- Front safety belts with pretensioners, load limiting systems, and safety belt usage sensors
- Driver and front passenger dual-stage airbags
- Driver and front passenger side airbags
- Driver and front passenger seat position sensors
- Crash severity sensors
- Restraints Control Module (RCM)
- Restraint system warning light

Dual-Stage Airbags

When activated, the airbags will deploy at either a normal or reduced level of inflation, depending on crash severity. Various sensors determine the direction and severity of an impact. The system analyses this information then deploys the appropriate airbags only.

Seat Position Sensors

Seat position sensors determine the position of the driver and passenger seats. The information is used to tailor the airbag deployment activation depending upon seat position.

The system is designed to help protect smaller drivers sitting close to the driver airbag by providing a lower airbag output level.

Pre-tensioner and Load Limiting Systems

The driver and front passenger seat belts are equipped with pre-tensioner and load limiting systems.

In most moderate frontal or near frontal accidents, the front airbag and pre-tensioner systems will deploy simultaneously.

In some moderate frontal or near frontal accidents, only the pre-tensioner system will deploy.

The pre-tensioners take up slack in the seat belts as the airbags are expanding. The load limiting system releases belt webbing in a controlled manner to reduce belt force on the occupant's chest.

Front Safety Belt Usage Sensors

Front safety belt usage sensors detect whether or not the driver and front passenger safety belts are fastened.

The information is used to tailor the airbag deployment and safety belt pre-tensioner activation depending upon safety belt usage.

Crash Severity Sensors

Crash severity sensors enhance the ability to detect the severity of an impact. Positioned up front, they provide valuable information early in the crash event on the severity of the impact. This allows the Restraints System to distinguish between different levels of crash severity and modify the deployment strategy of the dual-stage airbags and safety belt pretensioners.

Restraints Control Module

The Restraints Control Module (RCM) monitors its own internal circuits and the circuits for the airbag supplemental restraints, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt buckle sensors, and the driver seat position sensor.

In addition, the RCM also monitors the restraints warning light in the instrument cluster.

Determining if the System is Operational

The warning lamp in the instrument cluster indicates the condition of the system.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light will either flash or stay illuminated
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is switched ON

If either of these conditions occur, even intermittently, have the restraint system serviced at your Aston Martin Dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

Seat Belts

Aston Martin strongly recommend the use of seat belts.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Wearing your seat belt is crucial to your safety. Not wearing a seat belt increases chance of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Be sure that you and your passengers always fasten their seat belts and use them properly even though airbags are provided.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Reclining the seat back decreases protection provided by the seat belt in the event of a crash. Adjust the seat back to an upright position.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Make sure that the seat back is locked in place. Otherwise it could move forward in the event of a sudden stop or crash and cause injury.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Never place shoulder portion of belt under your arm or behind your back.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Always remove from your pockets rigid or breakable objects, i.e. spectacles or a mobile phone, which could be trapped under seat belts, possibly causing injury in the event of an accident.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Expectant mothers should seek medical advice on the most appropriate way to wear the seat belt.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Seat belts must be kept clean so that the retractor works correctly. Ensure that belt webbing is not twisted, looped, frayed or obstructed in any way. If in doubt about condition or operation of seat belt installation, have it checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.

⚠ Warning ⚠
No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent seat belt adjusting devices from operating, or prevent seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack. Never install accessories on your seat belts.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

⚠ Warning ⚠
It is essential to replace the entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the seat belt assembly is not obvious.

This vehicle is installed with four, three point, inertia reel seat belts.

Items 1, 2 and 3 indicate the three points of the seat belt. Item 3 is also the location of the belt buckle.



The inertia belt reels will automatically tension the belts to provide security with comfort. In the event of a collision or during severe braking, the belt reels will lock.

A warning lamp in the instrument cluster will illuminate for six seconds (approximately) when the ignition is switched ON if the driver's seat belt is not fastened. An audible warning will sound at the same time[1].

Seat Belt Fastening

When parked on an incline, the seat belt may lock as it is withdrawn. This is not a fault. If the mechanism locks, release the belt tension and then pull the belt very gently to avoid operation of the inertia lock.

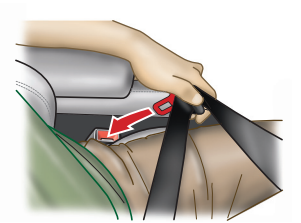
Pull out the seat belt, drawing the tongue over the shoulder and across the chest.



1. Market area dependant

Push the tongue into the belt buckle latch until a positive click is heard.

Pull upwards on the diagonal belt to ensure secure latching and to remove all slack from the belt.



Finally, double check that the lap belt is installed snugly, low down across the hips, and that there are no twists.

If it is necessary for an occupant to adjust their seat or seating position during a journey, the belt tension might be disturbed. The occupant should therefore (as soon as it is safe to do so) gently pull down the shoulder run of the seat belt to create some slack and then immediately release it to re-tension the belt for the new seating position.

Seat Belt Unfastening

Depress the button on the buckle. While holding the seat belt tongue allow the belt to slowly retract to it's stored position.



Seat Belt Fastening (Child)

Ensure there is no slack in the webbing and the restraint fits the child snugly across the rib cage and hips. These are the parts of the body most able to take the force of impact.

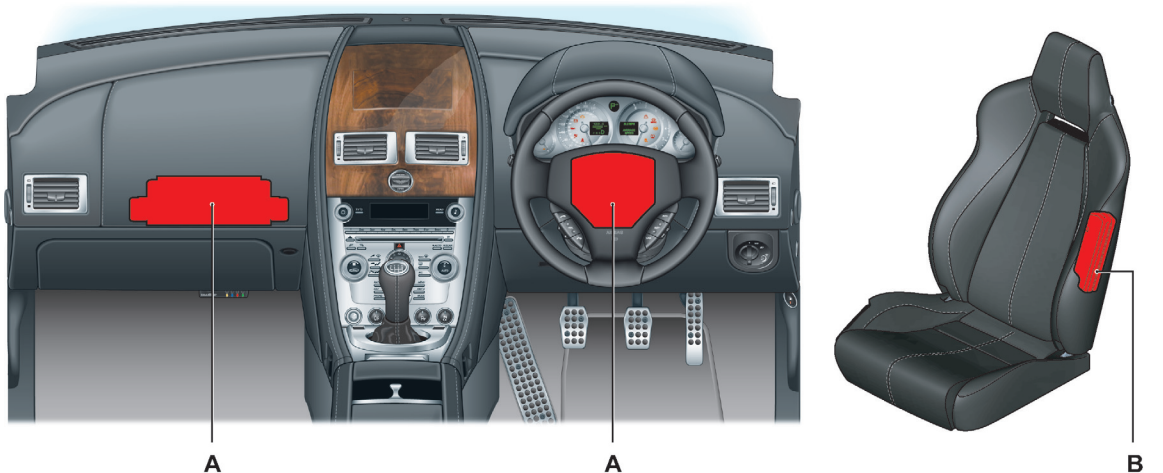
The lap strap should pass across the top of the child's thighs, bearing on the pelvis, not on the abdominal area.

Supplemental Restraints System (SRS)

The vehicle is equipped with driver and front passenger airbags. The airbags and seat belt pre-tensioners are electrically controlled by the restraints system (Refer to 'Restraints System', page 3.10).

The front airbags (A) only deploy in a serious front collision. The side airbags (B (one airbag in each front seat)) only deploy according to which side has been impacted in a serious side collision.

The purpose of the driver and front passenger airbags is to provide **additional** protection for the front seat occupants in the event of a serious impact (front or side impacts). The airbags are supplementary to the seat belts.

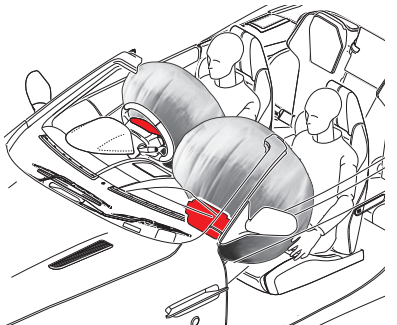


Important airbag safety labels are located on the sun visors and on the end of the instrument panel (passenger side). Ensure that the instructions on these labels are read and complied with prior to driving the vehicle.

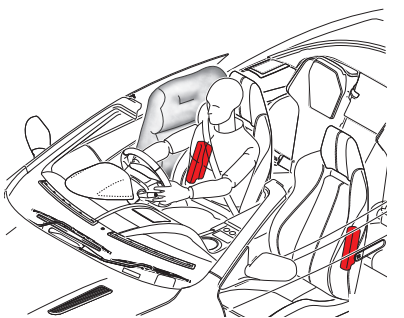
Airbag Deployment

Airbags inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is therefore a risk of death or serious injury such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained by seat belts or are not sitting correctly when the airbags deploy. The risk of injury from a deploying airbag is greatest close to the trim covering the airbag.

Front Airbags - on a frontal impact.



Side Airbags - on a side impact (where the impact is on that side only).



The whole sequence of events from sensing the impact to full inflation of the airbag takes place in a fraction of a second.

The noise and gas associated with the deployment of the airbags is not injurious to health.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

⚠ Warning ⚠

All occupants, including the driver, should always wear seat belts, whether or not an airbag is provided, to decrease the risk of injury or death in the event of a crash.

⚠ Warning ⚠

No objects whatsoever should be attached to the centre cover of the steering wheel or the passenger fascia panel. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the airbags to deploy.

Do not change, modify or tamper with the steering wheel, passenger side fascia or any other part of the airbag system. Such actions could disable the system or cause inadvertent airbag deployment.

The system will not deploy in the event of minor frontal or side impacts, such as contacts when parking. The airbag system is not designed to protect against rear impacts.

Any work on the airbag system must only be carried out by an Aston Martin Dealer.

Child Safety

A child, regardless of age, should always be restrained when travelling in a vehicle.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not allow children to travel in a vehicle without restraint. An appropriate child seat or harness should always be used.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Each seat belt assembly must be used by only one occupant. It is dangerous to put a seat belt around a child being carried on the occupants lap.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Accident statistics show that children are generally safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat. A suitable child restraint, properly installed and used, provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

Ensure that an installed child seat does not rest against the door, that the child sits properly in the seat and does not lean close to, or against, the door or window.

Child Seats and Passenger Airbags

⚠ Warning ⚠

Extreme Hazard

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

Aston Martin strongly recommend not to install any child seat on the front passenger seat of this vehicle.

In the event of a serious frontal or side collision the vehicle airbag system is designed to deploy, to provide **additional** protection for the front seat occupants.

If a forward facing child seat is to be used in the front passenger seat, follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to secure the child seat and **move the passenger seat to its rearmost and lowest position**.

The following warning labels[1] are located on the sun visors and on the end of the dash (passenger side).



1. Market Area Dependant

Child Seats

Aston Martin **does not** recommend any child seat for this vehicle.

Use of Child Seats - Seat Belt Installation

Mass Group [a]		Seating Position	
		Front Passenger	Second Row Outboard
'0'	Up to 10kg (0-9 months)	X	X
'0+'	Up to 13kg (0-18 months)	X	X
'I'	9 to 18kg (9 months to 4 years	X	X
'II'	15 to 25kg (4 to 12 years)	X	X
'III'	(22 to 36 kg (4 to 12 years))	X	X

a. As indicated on the child safety seat packaging

Key

U – Suitable for 'universal' category restraints approved for this mass group.

X – Seat position not suitable for children in the mass group.

* – Unsuitable for use with many child restraints due to limited space.

Supplied under EC Directive 77/541.

Consult with local manufacturers of smaller forward facing restraint and booster cushions. These manufacturers can supply you with advice on the safety of their particular child restraints, the position that they recommend, and also advice on installation instructions.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not seat a child aged 12 or younger, or weighing 36 kg (79.4 lb.) or less in the car without an appropriate child seat or booster cushion.

Use of Child Safety Seats

An infant or child that is not properly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash. Seat belts are designed for adults and larger children; infants and smaller children must be restrained in an approved child safety seat.

Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.

If you choose to use a child safety seat, follow the manufacturers instructions. Never hold a baby or child on your lap while riding in the vehicle.

Check the seat manufacturers instructions for proper use and installation – use the correct size seat and properly secure the seat in the vehicle in accordance with the manufacturers instructions. Be sure to read and follow the 'Installation and Use Instructions' provided with the child seat.

Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR)

This vehicle has Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) seat belts installed to the front passenger seat and the rear seats.

This system is designed to securely hold child seats. The ALR system temporarily locks the seat belt that is securing a child seat.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Always follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Not following the child-seat manufacturer's instructions when installing the child seat is dangerous.

ALR Operation

Gently pull out the relevant inertia reel seat belt until fully extended. The ALR system will only engage at the maximum extension point of the seat belt.

Thread the belt tongue through the child seat as instructed by the child seat manufacturer. Engage the tongue into the belt buckle.

Adjust the tongue position on the belt if necessary to ensure that the lower belt run is tight and then allow the upper run of the seat belt to fully retract until the child seat is securely held. The ALR system will be heard 'clicking' as the seat belt retracts. When fully retracted, pull down on the upper run of the belt to check that the ALR lock has engaged.

To remove the child seat, release the belt as normal and allow it to retract through the seat frame.

When parked on an incline, the belt may lock as it is withdrawn. This is not a fault. If the mechanism locks, release the belt tension and then pull the belt very gently to avoid operation of the inertia lock.

The ALR system will disengage when the belt is fully retracted. The belt may then be worn when required as a normal inertia reel belt. Once the ALR is disengaged, the belt must be fully extended to re-engage the system on the next occasion that a child seat is installed.

Deployable Rollbars (Volante)

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not place any objects on the top of the deployable rollbar covers behind the rear seat backs.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not allow any person to sit on the deployable rollbar covers at any time.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not attempt to service or modify the deployable rollbar system.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not attempt to reset the deployable rollbar system if it deploys.

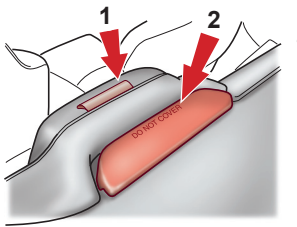
⚠ Warning ⚠

If the roof is closed and the deployable rollbars deploy they will break through the rear glass.

The deployable rollbar system comprises an electronic roll sensor unit integrated into the main crash sensor and two 'U' shaped roll bars, concealed behind the rear seat (Refer to 'Deployable Rollbars', page 6.9).

If the deployable rollbar system has been deployed, proceed to your nearest Aston Martin Dealer to check for any damage and to reset the system.

Warning Labels



The following warning labels are located on the deployable rollbar system.

1	'Rollbar'
2	'Do Not Cover'

Interior Storage

Glovebox

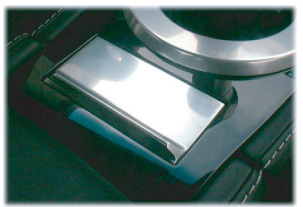
Glovebox switch (A)

Guidebook storage



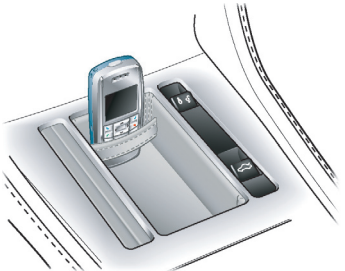
Trinket box

(Non smoking option).
Lift the lid to open.



Trinket tray, including mobile phone pocket, coin / credit card holder

(Automatic transmission only).



Armrest cubby box

Including iPod, USB ports, an auxiliary socket and an accessory socket.



Cup Holder

A Cup holder is provided in the Armrest Cubby box. The holder rotates through 180°.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Only use the cup holder when safe to do so.

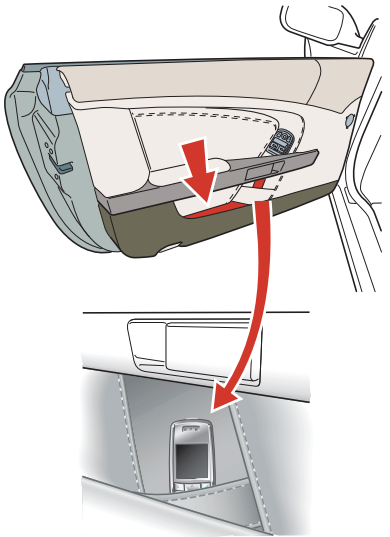
Do not place hot drinks in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. There is a risk of scalding.



⚠ Warning ⚠

Use soft cups only. Hard cups / objects can cause personal injury in a collision.

Door pockets, including mobile phone pocket



Seat Pockets



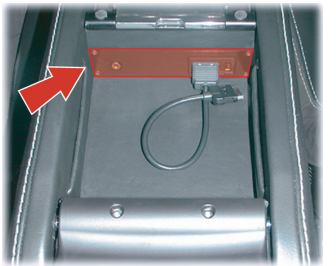


Media Devices

A dedicated Apple iPod player port is provided in the armrest cubby box, along with a USB port for the connection of USB storage devices and an auxiliary socket for other media devices.

iPod batteries and USB devices which require a power source are charged while connected.

After connecting the Apple iPod or USB storage device it can then be operated via the vehicle audio system (Refer to 'iPod / USB Connection', page 8.21).



iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Music devices connected using the Auxiliary socket will not be operated by the vehicle audio system (Refer to 'Auxiliary Functions', page 8.24) or have their batteries charged.

A music device, connected by the auxiliary socket, can be powered using the accessory socket mounted in the armrest cubby box.

Accessory Sockets

⚠ Warning ⚠
Damage to electrical circuits will result if more than 10 amps is drawn from the accessory socket. Only connect accessories which are designed for use in a motor vehicle.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Prolonged use of accessory socket when vehicle is stationary may seriously discharge battery.

Accessory sockets are mounted in the armrest cubby box and boot RH side wall (A) and may be used to power any 12 volt vehicle accessory requiring a current of less than 10 amps. The boot mounted accessory socket is a constant live.



On vehicles installed with the non-smoking option a second accessory socket is provided in the trinket box.

Read the manufacturer's instructions and ensure that you do not connect any device which would exceed current rating of accessory socket.



Ashtray and Cigar Lighter (Option)

The cigar lighter may be used when the vehicle key is in position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control.



Push down until it clicks. The lighter will pop up when ready for use.

⚠ Warning ⚠
The cigar lighter is heated to 'Red Heat' when in use. Take care to avoid burns. Do not allow children to play with the cigar lighter.

Remove the ashtray by opening the lid and pulling the glass tray upwards. Install the tray by placing it into position and push down.



Electric Windows

⚠ Warning ⚠
Misuse of the window switches, especially by children, can result in injury due to entrapment in the window closure. Drivers must advise all occupants of the possible danger and ensure that all obstructions are clear before raising the window.

Volante Only

Due to wind pressure when travelling at very high speeds the door windows may not close correctly.

To raise and lower the windows the vehicle key must be at position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control.

The windows can be operated up to one minute after the vehicle key is removed from the Ignition Control.

Lower - Lightly press and release the window switch (A) to lower the window in stages. Press firmly and release to lower the window with one touch.

Raise - Lightly pull back and release the window switch (A) to raise the window in stages.



If power to the electric windows has been interrupted for any reason, they will fail to operate correctly until reset (Refer to 'Door Window Reset', page 11.40).

Door Sealing

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Ensure that all occupants are clear when the window mechanism is operating.

To minimise wind noise and ensure a watertight window seal a door sealing system is used to ensure a tight fit of the door glass to the seals around the top of the door opening.

When a door is opened, the window glass automatically lowers a few millimetres to clear the door seal. As the door is closed, the window glass automatically, after a pause, raises against the body frame rubber seals.

Reading Lamps

Both reading lamps are controlled by the individual switches mounted on the Centre Stack (A).

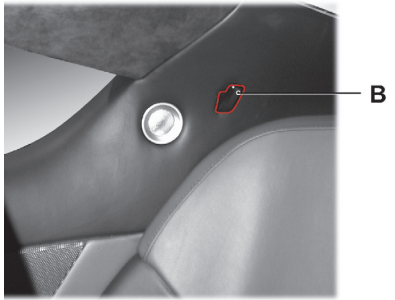
Unless switched OFF / ON at (A) they will continue to operate up to four minutes after the ignition is switched OFF.





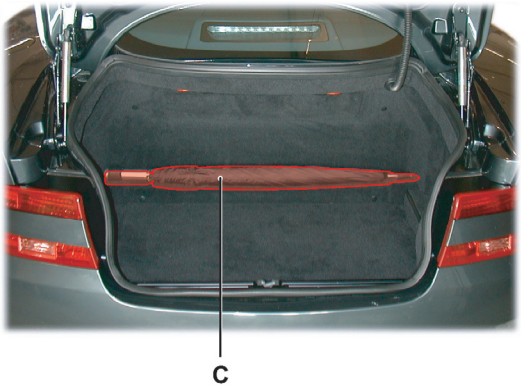
Coat Hooks

Coat hooks (B) are provided in the rear environment (one each side).



Umbrella

An umbrella (C), complete with holder, is provided in the rear of the boot.



ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

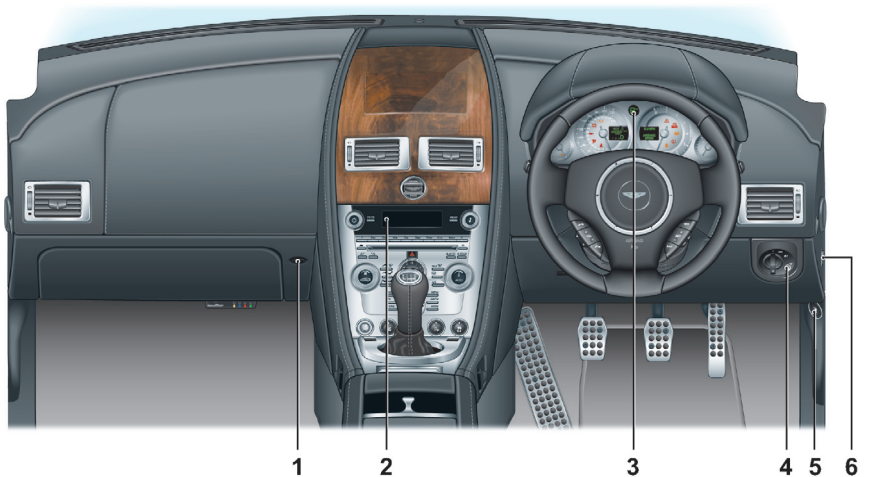
Controls

Contents

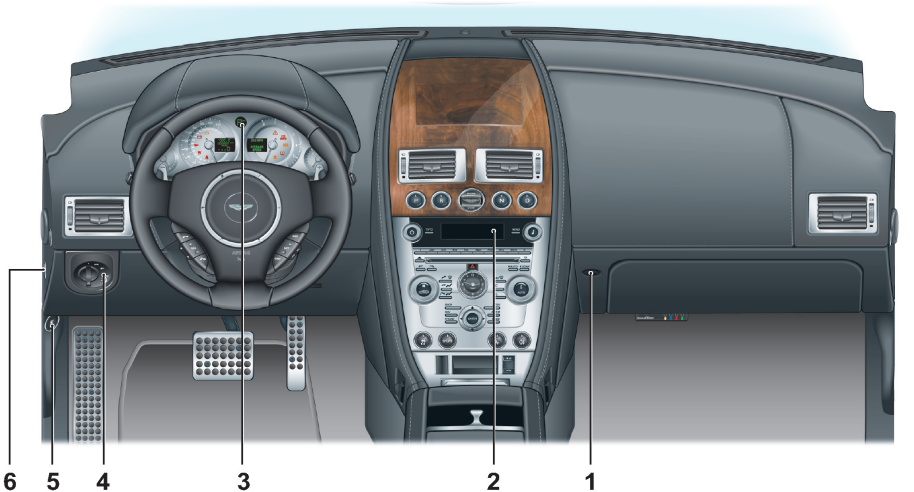
Overview 4.2
Instrument Cluster 4.4
Information / Warning Lamps 4.6
Centre Stack 4.10
Ignition Control 4.12
Stalk Controls 4.15
Vehicle Lights 4.17
Filler Flap Emergency Release 4.18
Vehicle Horn 4.18
Trip Computer 4.18
Cruise Control 4.20
Ambient Temperature 4.22
Tyre Pressure Monitoring 4.23

Overview

Right Hand Drive



Left Hand Drive



1 ***GLOVEBOX SWITCH -*** Press to open the glovebox. Push the glovebox lid up to close.

2 ***CENTRE STACK -*** (Refer to page 4.10).

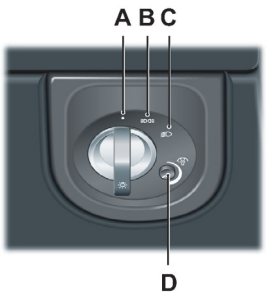
3 ***INSTRUMENT CLUSTER -*** (Refer to page 4.4).

4 ***MASTER LAMP SWITCH -***

A - All external lamps OFF.

B - Side lamps, side marker lamps, rear lamps and registration plate lamps ON.

C - Headlamps ON, in addition to the side, side marker, rear and registration plate lamps.



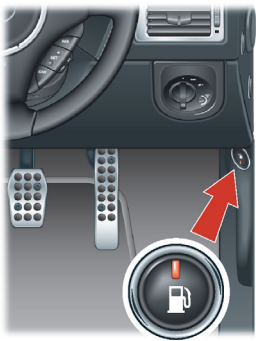
D - The level of illumination can be reduced / increased by using the rotary control. Push the rotary control in and release to enable the control. Push in and release to lock the control.

5 ***FUEL FLAP RELEASE -*** Press to open the fuel flap.

Close the fuel flap by pressing down on the flap until the lock engages.

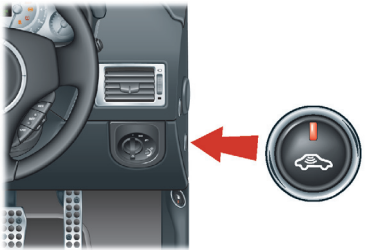
Filler Flap Emergency Release

(Refer to page 4.18)



6 ***REDUCED GUARD SWITCH -***

The reduced guard switch disables the deadlock system and allows for passengers or animals to be left in the vehicle without activating the security system.



With the vehicle key in position '0' or 'I' or within 60 seconds of removing the vehicle key the reduced guard switch can be activated. The switch lamp will show red when reduced guard is active (Refer to 'Reduced Guard', page 2.14).

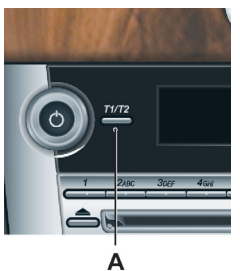
Instrument Cluster

1 ***FUEL GAUGE -*** Indicates how much fuel is in the fuel tank. Refuel as soon as possible when the low fuel lamp illuminates.

2 ***SPEEDOMETER -*** Indicates vehicle road speed.

3 ***MESSAGE CENTRE (LEFT) -*** Displays the following:

Trip Meter - The Trip Meter shows distances travelled since last reset of trip meters T1 and T2 (B). Toggle between T1 and T2 by pressing ***T1/T2*** (A) for less than three seconds. Press ***T1/T2*** for more than three seconds to reset the trip meter on display.



Sport Mode Status (Auto Only) - Shows 'Sport' (C) when sport mode is activated.

Gear Range (Auto Only) - Indicates the transmission position and current gear selection (D). Possible transmission positions and gear selection are in bold. Items not in bold are not selectable.



Cruise Status - Shows 'Cruise' (E) when cruise control is activated (Refer to 'Cruise Control', page 4.20).

Odometer - Shows the total distance covered by the vehicle (F).

4 ***GEAR POSITION INDICATOR DISPLAY (GPID) -*** **Automatic Transmission**



Indicates the current transmission position when in **Drive Auto** mode.

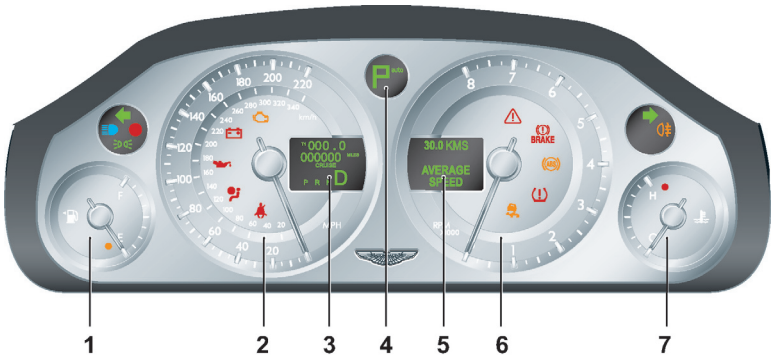
Indicates the current gear selection when in **Touchtronic** mode.

The current transmission mode, 'Auto' or 'Touch', is also shown (Refer to 'Auto Drive Mode', page 5.4).

GEAR POSITION INDICATOR DISPLAY (GPID) - **Manual Transmission**



Indicates the optimum time to shift gear. A red 'R' will show when the transmission is in reverse (Refer to 'Driving (Manual Transmission)', page 5.13).



5 ***MESSAGE CENTRE (RIGHT)*** **-** Displays the following:

Driver Information / Warnings

Messages appear if an unsatisfactory condition is detected. Message priority is indicated by a red or amber triangle above the message centre.

- **Red** Potential personal danger or danger of damage to the vehicle
- **Amber** Advisory, indicate possible degraded vehicle performance

Warning messages will be displayed when the ignition is ON and will cycle automatically. View or acknowledge messages at any time by pressing the **Read** button (B).



Information / Warning Lamps

5 Service Intervals

'Time for Regular Service' will be displayed when a regular vehicle service is due. This message will show at ignition ON for 120 seconds. It will continue display at ignition ON until the regular service has taken place.

Trip Computer

The message centre (right) defaults to the trip computer when there are no messages to show (Refer to 'Trip Computer', page 4.18).

6 ***TACHOMETER -*** Indicates engine speed in revolutions per minute x 1000.

7 ***ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE -*** Shows the temperature of the engine coolant.

1 ***LOW FUEL WARNING LAMP (AMBER) -*** Illuminates when approximately 13 ltr (3 Galls) remain. At 13 ltr (3 Galls) and 7 ltr (1.5 Galls) an audible 'beep' will sound and the 'estimated distance' message will show (for 20 seconds) in the message centre (right).

2 ***LEFT TURN DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN) -*** Flashes with the indicator lamps or hazard warning lamps (Ignition ON).

3 ***PATS LAMP -*** If the lamp flashes continuously at ignition ON the vehicle will remain immobilised. If the lamp is ON continuously at ignition ON the vehicle will start but PATS has gone into 'Fail Safe' mode (Refer to 'Passive Anti-Theft System', page 2.14).

Vehicles with Aston Martin Tracking Installed

If the PATS light continues to illuminate after the vehicle has started the driver recognition tag may not be in range of the tracking system (Refer to 'Aston Martin Tracking', page 2.2).



4 **SIDE LAMPS (GREEN) -** Indicates the side lamps / dip or main beams are illuminated.

5 **HEADLAMPS (BLUE) -** Indicates the main beam of the headlamps is in use.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Stop immediately if the Check Engine lamp flashes, do not drive the vehicle. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

6 **CHECK ENGINE (AMBER) -** Steady amber indicates a fault in the engine management system. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer immediately. Flashing amber indicates a major fault in the engine management system.

7 **IGNITION WARNING LAMP (RED) -** Illuminates when the ignition is ON. Extinguishes when the engine is started and battery charging commences. Illuminates if battery charging fails whilst driving.

8 ***OIL PRESSURE WARNING LAMP (RED) -*** Illuminates when the engine oil pressure falls below minimum. Do not continue driving if this lamp remains illuminated. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not drive the vehicle if the SRS warning lamp remains ON. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

9 ***SRS (SUPPLEMENTARY RESTRAINT SYSTEM) (RED) -*** At vehicle key position 'I' and 'II' or on vehicle start up, this lamp illuminates for a few seconds as a readiness indicator. If it does not illuminate, or if it does not go OFF after a few seconds, or if it comes ON whilst driving, the airbag self-diagnostic system has detected a fault.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not drive the vehicle if the seat belt warning lamp remains ON. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

10 ***SEAT BELT WARNING (RED) -*** This warning lamp will illuminate and a chime will sound for six seconds if the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition is switched ON. The chime will continue to activate at different vehicle speeds until the seat belt is fastened[a].

11 ***WARNING TRIANGLE -*** Indicates Red or Amber depending on warning / information message priority.

a. Market dependant.

⚠ Warning ⚠
If the Brake Warning lamp remains illuminated, after fully releasing the handbrake do not drive the vehicle. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

12 ***BRAKE WARNING (RED) -*** At ignition ON this lamp will illuminate when the handbrake is applied. It will go out when the handbrake is fully released. If the lamp remains ON, after fully releasing the handbrake, it indicates that either the brake fluid level is low and / or that the brake pads require regular maintenance (Refer to 'Footbrake', page 5.14).

⚠ Warning ⚠
If the ABS Warning lamp remains illuminated, do not drive the vehicle. Have the system checked by an Aston Martin Dealer.

13 ***ABS WARNING LAMP (AMBER) -*** Indicates a concern in the ABS control circuits. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer immediately if this lamp remains illuminated.

14 ***TYRE PRESSURE (AMBER) (NOT JAPANESE MARKET) -*** During vehicle start up, this lamp will illuminate, briefly, as a readiness indicator. It will illuminate again if tyre pressure falls below specification (Refer to 'Tyre Pressure Monitoring', page 4.23).

15 ***DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL -*** At ignition ON or on vehicle start up, this lamp will illuminate, as a readiness indicator. If, while DSC is active, the DSC symbol stays illuminated or it illuminates whilst driving, the DSC system has detected a fault. A DSC fault message will be displayed in the message centre (right). Consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible. (Refer to 'Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)', page 5.17).

16 ***RIGHT TURN DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN) -*** Flashes with the indicator lamps or hazard warning lamps (Ignition ON).

17 ***REAR FOG -*** Indicates if the rear fog lamps are ON.

18 ***HIGH COOLANT TEMP (RED) -*** Indicates when engine coolant temperature exceeds 120°C (248°F).

Low Outside Temperature

At temperatures below 4°C (39°F) the message 'Ice Warning' is displayed in the message centre (right), this indicates to the driver that frost or ice is likely to form on road surfaces.

The amber warning triangle ⚠ will also illuminate.

The the message and warning triangle will continue to show until the outside temperature rises to a safer level.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Even if the 'Ice Warning' message does not show, there is no guarantee that at low temperatures the road is free from ice.

Warning Lamp Indications

As the ignition is switched ON, the electronic control units complete a self check to ensure correct operation. During these checks the following lamps will illuminate for five seconds and 'System Check' will appear on the message centre (right).



Under normal circumstances most warning lamps will extinguish at the end of the individual system check if system checks are satisfactory.

Centre Stack

1. ***SATELLITE NAVIGATION SCREEN (NOT AVAILABLE IN ALL MARKETS) -*** Opens when Satellite Navigation system is active (Refer to 'Satellite Navigation', page 10.1).
2. ***IGNITION CONTROL -*** Insert the vehicle key for ignition. When illuminated Red (with the brake (automatic) or clutch (manual) pedal pressed down), press the vehicle key fully in to start the engine (Refer to 'Starting the Engine', page 5.2).
3. ***TRANSMISSION CONTROLS -*** Park, Reverse, Neutral and Drive controls (automatic vehicles only) (Refer to 'Auto Drive Mode', page 5.4).
4. ***DISPLAY -*** Presents options, menus and information.
5. ***AUDIO CONTROLS -*** (Refer to 'Audio', page 8.1).
6. ***READ -*** Press to view / acknowledge messages.

7 ***HAZARD WARNING LAMPS -*** Press to activate the hazard warning lamps. Press again to deactivate.

8 ***CLIMATE CONTROL -*** (Refer to 'Climate Control', page 7.1).

9 ***MODE AND MENU NAVIGATION -*** Select functions and move back in the menus. Use the joystick to navigate up / down / left / right for menus, music tracks, radio stations. Press to accept.

10 ***AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION -***

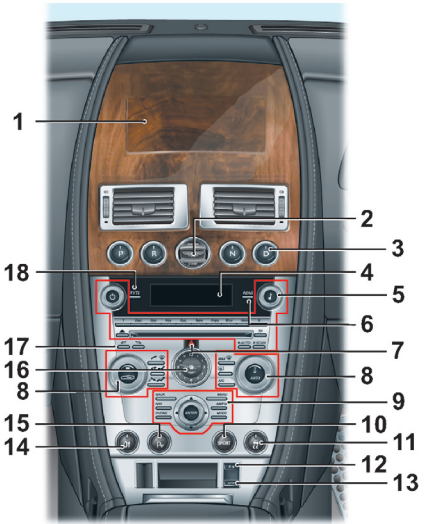
Sport Mode - Press the **Sport** button once to enter sport mode and press again to exit sport mode (Refer to 'Auto Drive Mode', page 5.4).

MANUAL TRANSMISSION -

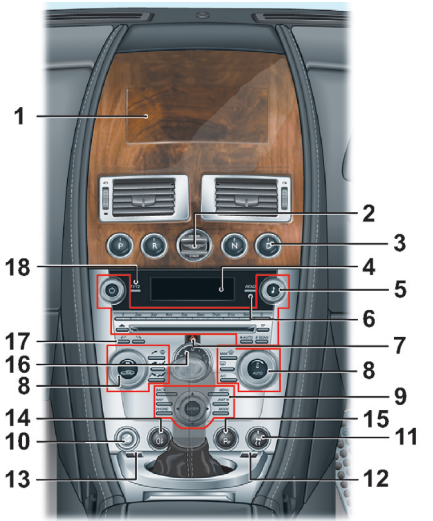
Lamy Pen Holder - Push the pen in and release to access the pen.

Items 10, 11, 14, 15 are mirrored on LHD vehicles.

Automatic Transmission



Manual Transmission



11 ***DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL -*** The DSC system is always ON when the ignition is ON. Press and hold for approximately four seconds to switch OFF. Press and release to switch ON. (Refer to 'Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)', page 5.17).

12 ***MASTER VEHICLE LOCK -*** Press to lock both doors and disable the boot lock and the boot open switch. Pull up to unlock. (Refer to 'Master Lock Switch', page 2.9).

13 ***BOOT OPEN -*** Pull up to open the boot. On Volante models this switch becomes the roof open and close switch (Refer to 'Convertible Roof (Volante)', page 6.1).

14 ***REAR FOG LAMPS -*** Used in conjunction with the dipped beam when fog / mist is causing restricted visibility. They **must** be switched OFF when visibility clears to reduce glare to the drivers of following vehicles.

15 ***PARKING ASSIST -*** Defaults to active at each ignition cycle. Press and release to activate / de-activate parking assist. Illuminates when parking assist is OFF.

(Refer to 'Rear Parking Assist', page 5.20).

(Refer to 'Front and Rear Parking Assist (Option)', page 5.21).

16 ***CLOCK -*** To set the time press ***MENU***. Go to *<Clock settings>*.

17 ***READ LAMPS -*** Driver and passenger reading lamps.

18 ***T1/T2 -*** Select between two trip meters (Refer to 'Trip Computer', page 4.18)

Ignition Control

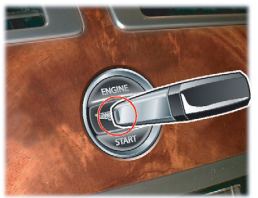
To access vehicle functions and to start the engine, the vehicle key must be inserted in to the Ignition Control.



⚠ Warning ⚠

Only use the vehicle key in the Ignition Control. Do not place any objects, including fingers, into the Ignition Control other than the vehicle key. Objects other than the vehicle key may cause the Ignition Control to fail.

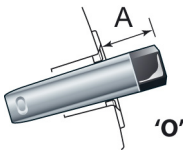
The vehicle key must only be inserted into the Ignition Control with the two indents first, as shown. Attempting to insert the larger end first the key may damage the Ignition Control.



Position ‘0’ (Ignition OFF)

Auxiliaries off (Audio, Satellite Navigation, Hands-Free phone not available), steering lock engaged. Seats can be adjusted.

Gently insert the vehicle key, indents first, into the Ignition Control. Press in until the key clicks into place (approximately 20 mm (0.75 in) A) then release. The key is docked at this point.

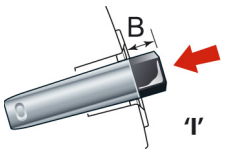


Remove by pulling the vehicle key from the Ignition Control.

Position ’I’ (Ignition OFF / Accessories ON))

Auxiliaries ON (Audio, Satellite Navigation, Hands-Free phone available), steering lock engaged.

- If already in position ‘0’ gently press the key until the infotainment centre and the instrument cluster light up (a further 10 mm (0.5 in) (B)) and release for position ‘I’.
- Or insert the key into the Ignition Control and move straight to position ‘I’. Press in until the infotainment centre and the instrument cluster illuminate.



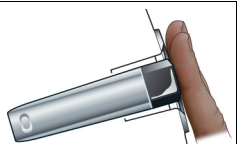
Remove by pulling the vehicle key from the Ignition Control.

Position 'II' (Ignition ON)

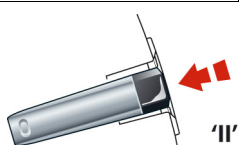
Ignition and all other electrical systems ON, steering lock OFF.

Do not depress the brake (automatic) clutch (manual) pedal unless intending to start the engine (Refer to 'Starting the Engine', page 5.2).

Insert the key to position 'II' by using the flat of a finger, as shown.



- If the key is already in position '0' or 'I' gently press the key until it is flush with the Ignition Control bezel and release.



- Or insert the key into the Ignition Control and move straight to position 'II'. Gently press the key until it is flush with the Ignition Control bezel and release.

To start the engine from this position fully press the brake (automatic) clutch (manual) pedal down and press the key fully in (Refer to 'Starting the Engine', page 5.2).

*If the vehicle key is pressed **fully** into the Ignition Control and released for position 'II', the key must be returned to position 'I' to start the engine (Refer to 'Starting the Engine', page 5.2).*

The Instrument pack will light up, the vehicle systems will wake up and the steering lock will release.

Remove the vehicle key from position 'II' by pressing the key fully in **twice**, without depressing the brake (automatic) clutch (manual) pedal, and release. The key will gently return to position 'I'. Pull the key from the Ignition Control. Once in position 'I' after 10 seconds the steering lock will engage.

Starting the Engine

(Refer to 'Starting the Engine', page 5.2).

Preventing Unnecessary Battery Drain

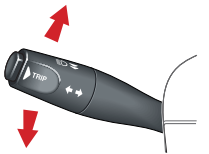
If the vehicle key is left in the Ignition Control (position '0'), some vehicle circuits will remain active and unnecessary current will be drawn from the battery.

A temporary label is installed on all new vehicles to remind drivers to remove the vehicle key whenever the ignition is switched OFF (Refer to 'Battery Charge', page 11.24).



Left Hand Stalk

Turn Signals - Up indicates a right turn. Down indicates a left turn. Hold against spring pressure to indicate a lane change. Returns to the centre position on completion of a manoeuvre.



Main and Dipped Beam Switching - Pull forwards and latch for main beam. Pull forwards again and latch to return to dipped beam. Pull forwards and release without latching, at any time while the vehicle key is in the Ignition Control, to flash main beam ON and OFF.



Pull forwards and release without latching, when the vehicle key is removed, to activate Homesafe (Refer to 'Homesafe', page 2.13).

Trip Computer - Repeated pressing of the trip function button cycles through the trip computer displays. (Refer to 'Trip Computer', page 4.18).



Right Hand Stalk

Windscreen Wiper Control -



1 OFF.
2 Intermittent Wipe.
3 Normal Speed Wipe.
4 Fast Wipe.

Demand Wipe - Pull the stalk forwards.

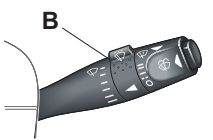
The windscreen wipers will return to their park position if the ignition is switched OFF or the bonnet is unlatched, regardless of the RH stalk position.

Speed Sensitive Wipe - If the wipers are at fast wipe, when the vehicle slows down (below 11 km/h (7 m.p.h.)) the wipers will go to normal wipe speed.

If the wipers are at normal speed when the vehicle slows down (below 11 km/h (7 m.p.h.)) the wipers will go to intermittent wipe (position 2).

As soon as the vehicle speeds up (above 15 km/h (9.5 m.p.h.) the wipers will return to their original setting.

Windscreen Wiper Delay Control -



Intermittent wipe time delay increases / decreases in six steps (B). Sixth position gives the shortest delay between wipes.

Windscreen Washer Control -

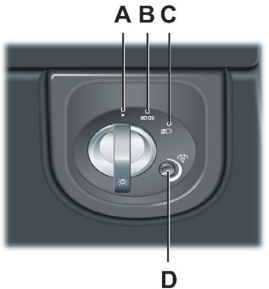


Press for more than one second to activate the windscreen washers. Operation continues until the button is released. When released the washers stop immediately but the wipers continue for a few strokes, ending with a pause and then a final wipe.

If used during normal wiper operation, the wipers operate continually irrespective of the washer operation.

Headlamp Washers - Headlamp washers will operate automatically, once per journey (each ignition cycle), if the windscreen washers are operated and the headlamps are ON.

Master Lamp Switch



A - All external lamps OFF.

B - Side lamps, side marker lamps, rear lamps and registration plate lamps ON.

C - Headlamps ON, in addition to the side, side marker, rear and registration plate lamps.

If Homesafe (Refer to 'Homesafe', page 2.13) has been activated with the master lamp switch at position C (headlamps ON), the main beam will remain ON. Ensure the master lamp switch is at position A before exiting.

D - During the daylight hours the level of instrument illumination defaults to maximum brightness and is not adjustable. During the twilight and night time hours a Twilight sensor automatically reduces the level of illumination to a preset level.

The level of illumination can be further reduced by using the rotary control. If the illumination level has been adjusted, the twilight and night time illumination level will return the previous setting on the rotary control, each time the sensor picks up the twilight hours.

Push the rotary control in and release to enable the control. Push in and release to lock the control.

Lights ON Warning

If the vehicle side lights are ON, and the drivers door is opened after the vehicle key has been removed from the Ignition Control, a warning buzzer will sound. The buzzer will sound for a period of five minutes. To stop the buzzer switch the lights OFF. The buzzer will also stop when the driver's door is shut - the lights will remain ON.

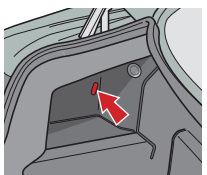
Day Time Running Lamps

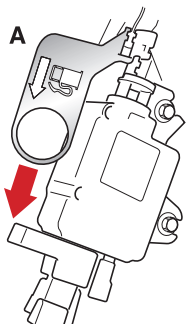
(Denmark and Norway only)

The dipped beams and side lights are permanently ON.

Filler Flap Emergency Release

If the filler flap will not open when the release switch is pressed, open the filler flap manually. Reach through the LH boot trim to access the manual fuel filler flap release. Pull the lever (A) to open the filler flap.





Vehicle Horn

To sound the horn press the centre pad of the steering wheel at any of the positions shown.



Trip Computer

Pressing A for less than three seconds cycles through the trip computer functions one at a time. Trip computer information is viewed in the message centre (right).



If an information message displays, after reading and acting on the information provided press the Read button (B) to return to the trip display.



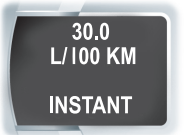
Range - Estimated range on remaining fuel (no reset). The minimum distance displayed will read 20 km (15 mile). Below this distance will show '---'.



Average Fuel - Average fuel consumption since last reset. Press A for more than three seconds but less than five seconds to reset. Press A for five seconds or more will reset both the average fuel consumption and average speed. 'Infocenter is Reset' will be displayed in the message centre (right).



Instantaneous Fuel - Indicates the fuel consumption over the last three seconds of travel (no reset).



Average Speed - Shows the average speed since last reset. Press A for more than three seconds but less than five seconds to reset. Press A for five seconds or more will reset both the average speed and average fuel consumption. 'Infocenter is Reset' will be displayed in the message centre (right).



Present Speed - Indicates the present vehicle speed.

Driver aid only.

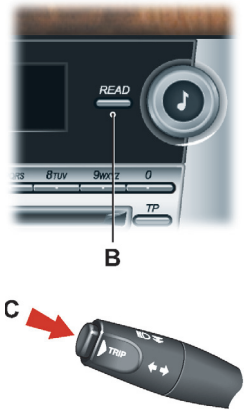
Trip computer default screen.



Blank Screen - Blank screen will show.

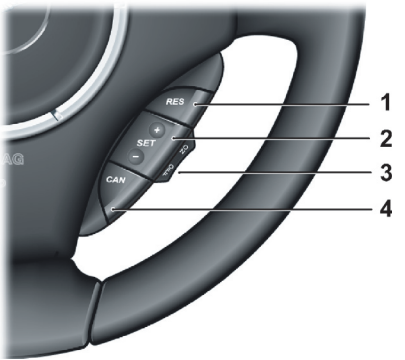
Display Units

With the ignition ON press the Read button (B) and the Trip Computer control (C) together for three seconds to change the trip computer display units.



Cruise Control

Cruise control can be used to maintain a selected vehicle speed, above 35 km/h (22 m.p.h.), without having to use the accelerator.



1 ***RES -*** Resume the set speed retained in memory.
2 ***SET -*** Set the speed or accelerate / decelerate.
3 ***ON/OFF -*** Switches cruise control ON / OFF.
4 ***CAN -*** Cancels cruise control but retains the set speed in memory.

Operation

⚠ Warning ⚠
Only use cruise control when conditions are favourable, for example, straight, dry, open roads with light traffic.

Use ***ON/OFF*** (3) to activate cruise control. When cruise control is active 'Cruise' will show in the message centre (left) (Refer to 'Instrument Cluster', page 4.4).

Under certain conditions cruise control will automatically switch OFF (Refer to 'Cruise Control Automatic Switch OFF', page 4.22).

When travelling at the desired speed, which must be above 35 km/h (22 m.p.h.), press ***SET*** (+ or –) (2). Cruise control will engage and maintain that speed without the need to use the accelerator pedal.

Cruise control will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is pressed or when the vehicle speed falls below 35 km/h (22 m.p.h.) (Refer to 'Resuming the Set Speed', page 4.21).

Changing the Set Speed

There are three ways to change the set speed:

1. Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed then press ***SET*** (+ or –).
2. Increase or decrease the speed by pressing and holding either ***SET*** (+ or –) until the desired speed is obtained, then release the switch.
3. Increase or decrease the speed in steps of 2 km/h (1 m.p.h.) by briefly pressing either ***SET*** (+ or –) until the desired speed is obtained.

Resuming the Set Speed

If the vehicle is accelerated above the set speed, then the set speed will be resumed when the accelerator pedal is released.

If ***CAN*** (4) is pressed, or the brake or clutch pedal is pressed, the cruise control will disengage but the set speed memory will be retained. Press ***RES*** (1) and the vehicle will return to the set speed.

Cruise control will not resume at speeds below 35 km/h (22 m.p.h.) ***RES*** *will not operate if the ignition has been turned OFF.*

RES should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

It is not recommended to resume set speed when a low gear is selected as excessive engine speeds will occur.

Cruise Control Automatic Switch OFF

Cruise control will automatically switch OFF and clear the memory when:

- The vehicle key is moved to position '0'
- A fault occurs. The cruise control system will switch OFF and cannot be used until the fault is cleared
- The handbrake is applied
- Maximum vehicle speed is reached

Cruise control will automatically switch OFF but the set speed will remain in the memory when:

- The ***CAN*** button is pressed
- The brake pedal is pressed
- Vehicle speed falls below 35 km/h (22 m.p.h.)
- Neutral, Park or Reverse gear positions are selected
- The difference between the actual and set speed is too great
- When the set speed is above 144 km/h (90 m.p.h.); cruise control will disengage automatically after approximately 20 minutes
- The accelerator pedal is used to accelerate beyond the set speed for too long a period

Ambient Temperature

The ambient temperature (outside temperature) is displayed in the top RH corner of the Infotainment centre display.

If the vehicle has been travelling a while and then is stopped in a shaded / enclosed area the ambient temperature may rise, this is due to the heat from the engine bay. The ambient temperature display will reflect the true ambient temperature once the vehicle is moving again or the engine bay cools down.

If required the display units can be changed from °C to °F or °F to °C (Refer to 'Display Units', page 7.8).

Tyre Pressure Monitoring

⚠ Warning ⚠

Tyre pressure monitoring is not intended to replace driver awareness of tyre performance or the need for recommended weekly checks on tyre condition and pressure.

Japanese Market

Tyre pressure monitoring is not available.

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label (if your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale ('Warning lamp' (Refer to 'Tyre Pressure (Amber) (Not Japanese Market)', page 4.9) when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure warning lamp.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction telltale to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction telltale is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale (A).



When the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Operation

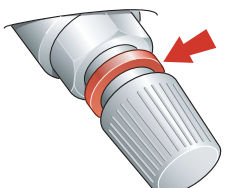


The system consists of a control unit (B), mounted in the front passenger footwell, and tyre pressure sensors, one located in each road wheel. Each pressure sensor constantly monitors its tyre pressure and sends this information to the control unit.

The control unit has a system LED to indicate the system status, and one status LED per road wheel.

The control unit road wheel status LED's are colour coded to the coloured collars on the road wheel valves.

Each pressure monitoring device has a colour coded collar. Ensure the coloured collars are installed correctly, i.e. after new tyres are installed.

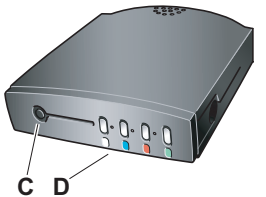


Roadwheel	Colour
Front Right	Green
Front Left	Red
Rear Right	Blue
Rear Left	Yellow

Tyre pressure monitoring is also available on winter wheels and tyres. Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer.

At the start of each journey, with the vehicle key at position 'II' (ignition ON) or with the engine running, the low tyre pressure warning lamp will illuminate for approximately five seconds and then extinguish.

The control unit LEDs (C (System Status)) and D (Tyre Status)) will flash amber continuously. Once a speed of 10 km/h (6 m.p.h.) has been reached the LEDs start to receive signals from the pressure monitoring devices in the road wheels. The system status LED will change to steady green and the tyre LEDs will extinguish one by one.



The control unit remains active until the vehicle has come to a halt and the ignition is switched OFF.

Warnings

⚠ Warning ⚠

When a tyre low pressure warning is detected reduce vehicle speed to an appropriate safe level and stop at the first safe and convenient place to inspect the tyre(s).

If stationary for 20 minutes or more (engine running or ignition ON) the tyre pressure warning lamp will illuminate and 'Tyre System Fault' will show in the message centre (right). If, after moving off (allow three to four minutes driving (maximum 20 minutes)), the lamp and message do not clear then the system may be at fault. Stop and check the system

If the tyre warning lamp illuminates while driving, reduce speed to 48 km/h (30 m.p.h.) and stop in safe place as soon as possible. Do not stop the engine.

A warning message will also show in the message centre (right) indicating a tyre fault or a system fault.

Ensuring that neutral has been selected and that the handbrake is applied, check the status of the control unit LED's. After noting the control unit LED's status stop the engine and follow the actions listed in the following tables.

Warning Lamp	Constant.
Message Centre (Right)	Check Tyres.
Control Module	Control module LED constant **green.** Tyre LED(s) constant **red**.
Fault	Tyre pressure below specification.

Action

Check the tyre pressure of the affected tyre(s), indicated by the tyre LED's on the control unit. Re-inflate the affected tyre(s). After inflating the tyre(s) to the manufacturer's recommended inflation pressure as shown on the tyre label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least five minutes over 32 km/h (20 m.p.h.) before the Warning lamp extinguishes.

Warning Lamp	Flashing for 75 seconds then constant.
Message Centre (Right)	Tyre System Fault.
Control Module	Control module LED flashing **amber.** Tyre LED(s) constant **amber**.
Fault	Tyre transmitter fault.

Possible Cause

- Wheels and tyres have been installed which do not have TPMS sensors

Action

Continue at a reduced speed of 48 km/h (30 m.p.h.) maximum. Have the TPMS checked at the earliest opportunity. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Warning Lamp	Flashing for 75 seconds then constant.
Message Centre (Right)	Tyre System Fault.
Control module	Control module LED constant **Red.**
Fault	System failure.

Possible Cause

- The TPMS sensors have become defective
- An unapproved accessory is interfering with the TPMS
- A general fault has been detected in the TPMS

Action

Continue at a reduced speed of 48 km/h (30 m.p.h.) maximum. Have the control unit and the tyre transmitters checked at the earliest opportunity. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Driving

Contents

Driving Safety 5.2
Starting the Engine 5.2
Auto Drive Mode 5.4
Driving (Auto Mode) 5.6
Touchtronic Drive Mode 5.7
Driving (Touchtronic Mode) 5.9
Sport Mode 5.10
Fault Conditions 5.11
Driving (Manual Transmission) 5.13
Footbrake 5.14
Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) 5.15
Handbrake 5.16
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) 5.17
Fuel Filling 5.19
Catalytic Converters 5.20
Rear Parking Assist 5.20
Front and Rear Parking Assist (Option) 5.21
Driving Techniques 5.23
Headlamp Levelling 5.25

Driving Safety

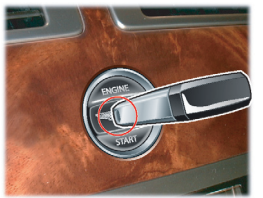
- Always wear your seat belt
- Never drive under the influence of alcohol or drugs
- Always obey all speed and traffic laws and regulations. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit or than conditions allow
- Be particularly careful driving on slippery or wet surfaces
- This vehicle is a high performance vehicle and has handling characteristics you may not be accustomed to. Familiarise yourself with the vehicle and always drive prudently, being aware of your own limitations and the limitations of the vehicle. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate the vehicle properly can result in accident and injury
- Follow the maintenance schedule prescribed in this guide
- Never allow the vehicle to be driven by inexperienced drivers

Starting the Engine

⚠ Warning ⚠

Only use the vehicle key in the Ignition Control. Do not place any objects, including fingers, into the Ignition Control other than the vehicle key. Objects other than the vehicle key may cause the Ignition Control to fail.

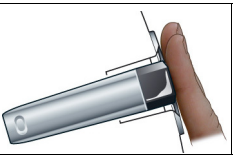
The vehicle key must only be inserted into the Ignition Control with the two indents first, as shown. Attempting to insert the larger end first the key may damage the Ignition Control.



Check that the handbrake is applied.

Insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and gently press the key until it is flush with the Ignition Control bezel and release (position 'II').

Insert the key to position 'II' by using the flat of a finger, as shown.

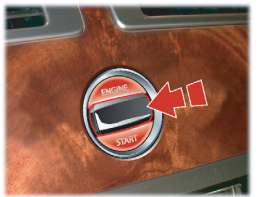


Fully press the:

Automatic Only **-** Brake pedal down.

Manual Only - Clutch pedal down.

The Ignition Control will show red.



The engine will not start until the Ignition Control illuminates red. The Ignition Control will illuminate red (Ignition Control active) only if the brake (Automatic) or clutch (Manual) pedal is fully pressed down and the steering lock has released.

Press the key fully into the Ignition Control, hold in until the engine starts and release.



The vehicle key will sit flush with the Ignition Control bezel while the engine is running. The Ignition Control will show a white light when the engine is running, and then fade out.

Do not press the vehicle key while driving. If the key is pressed in and released the engine will stop. If the key is removed from the Ignition Control while driving the engine will stop but the steering lock will not engage until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

If the engine fails to start the vehicle key must be returned to position 'I' to crank the engine again.

1. Press the key fully in, without depressing the brake (automatic) or clutch (manual) pedal, and release. The key will gently return to position 'I'.
2. Start the engine start procedure again.

Engine Quick Start

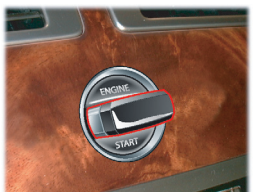
1. Check that the handbrake is applied.
2. Fully press the brake (automatic) or clutch (manual) pedal down.
3. Insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and press the key fully in, hold in until the engine starts then release.

When moving straight to engine start the vehicle system will take short time (approximately 1.4 seconds) to complete a system check and release the steering lock before allowing the engine to crank.

Starting From Cold

The engine management system automatically compensates for cold or warm start conditions and makes appropriate adjustments to the fuel / air mixture and ignition timing.

Stopping the Engine



Press the vehicle key fully in and release. The engine will stop as the key returns to position 'I'.
Withdraw the vehicle key from the Ignition Control.

Auto Drive Mode



Park (P)



Press **P** to select Park once the vehicle is stationary. The transmission will mechanically lock. If the vehicle key is moved to position '0' while the vehicle is at a standstill, the transmission will automatically select **P**.

Always ensure that the handbrake is applied.

The message centre (left) displays the current position and the GPID displays **'P'**.

*It is not possible to select **P** above approximately 2 km/h (1 m.p.h.).*



Reverse (R)

The engine cannot be started in this position.



Reverse can only be selected by pressing the **R** button while in Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**), with the brake pedal pressed.

*If the brake pedal is not pressed the message centre (right) will display '**Press Brake Pedal**'.*

*If the vehicle speed is less than approximately 5 km/h (3 m.p.h.), **R** may be selected from Drive (**D**), without pressing the brake pedal, to enable a vehicle 'rocking' i.e. to enable vehicle movement out of mud, snow, etc. If 5 km/h (3 m.p.h.) is exceeded then the transmission will automatically select **N**.*

The message centre (left) displays the current position, the GPID displays **R** coloured red, an audible warning will sound and the reverse button 'telltale' lamp will illuminate.



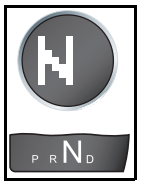
Neutral (N)



Press the **N** button to select Neutral. or by pulling back on both gearshift paddles simultaneously. When selecting **N** from **P** the brake pedal must be depressed.

*If the brake pedal is not pressed the message centre (right) will display '**Press Brake Pedal**'.*

The message centre (left) displays the current position and the GPID displays '**N**'.



Drive (D)

The engine cannot be started in this position.



Press the **D** button with the brake pedal depressed to select Drive.

*If the brake pedal is not pressed the message centre (right) will display '**Press Brake Pedal**'.*

*If the vehicle speed is less than approximately 5 km/h (3 m.p.h.), **D** may be selected from **R**, without pressing the brake pedal. This enables a vehicle 'rocking' motion, i.e. to enable vehicle movement out of mud, snow, etc.*

Driving (Auto Mode)

The message centre (left) will display the current position, the GPID displays '**D'** and **'Auto'** and the drive button 'telltale' lamp will illuminate.



From Auto **D** enter **Touchtronic** mode (Refer to 'Touchtronic Drive Mode', page 5.7) by pulling back on either the '**+**' or '**–**' gearshift paddles. The message centre (left) will still display the current position but the GPID will now display the current gear, i.e. '**2**' and '**Touch'** and the drive button 'telltale' lamp will go out.

Start the engine, apply the footbrake and select a drive option. Release the handbrake, release the footbrake and gradually increase engine speed to move off. Gearshifts will occur automatically as speed increases.

Check the message centre (left) and the GPID for correct position and gear.

*At any point while in Auto **D** pull back on a gear shift paddle to enter **Touchtronic** mode.*

To bring the vehicle to a halt, press the brake pedal. The transmission will downshift automatically.

When the vehicle is stationary the transmission will select 1st gear, ready to move off immediately when the accelerator is pressed.

To stop the engine, press **P**, apply the handbrake and move the vehicle key to position 'I' (ignition OFF).

If unable to engage P a warning will appear in the message centre (right) and a audible warning will sound.

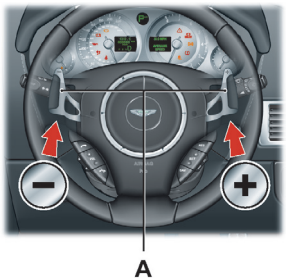
Touchtronic Drive Mode

Park and reverse are selected by using the centre stack mounted buttons.

Drive and neutral are selected by using the gearshift paddles mounted on the steering column (A).

RH paddle (+) - Controls upshifts

LH paddle (–) - Controls downshifts.



*If in **Auto** mode **D** select **Touchtronic** mode by pulling back on either the '+' or '–' gearshift paddles. As a paddle is pulled back a gearshift will occur, this will be an upshift or downshift according to which paddle is pulled.*

When shifting gear the GPID displays the target gear and '**Touch**', while the message centre (left) will display the actual gear when the transmission has shifted.



Park (P)



Press **P** to select Park once the vehicle is stationary. The transmission will mechanically lock. If the vehicle key is moved to position '0' (ignition OFF) while the vehicle is at a standstill, the transmission will automatically select '**P**'.

Always ensure that the handbrake is applied.

The message centre (left) displays the current position and the GPID displays '**P**'.



*It is not possible to select **P** above approximately 2 km/h (1 m.p.h.).*

Reverse (R)

The engine cannot be started in this position.



Reverse can only be selected by pressing the **R** button while in Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**), with the brake pedal pressed.

*If the brake pedal is not pressed the message centre (right) will display '**Press Brake Pedal**'.*

*If the vehicle speed is less than approximately 5 km/h (3 m.p.h.), **R** may be selected from Drive (**D**), without pressing the brake pedal, to enable a vehicle 'rocking' i.e. to enable vehicle movement out of mud, snow, etc. If 5 km/h (3 m.p.h.) is exceeded then the transmission will automatically select **N**.*

The message centre (left) displays the current position, the GPID displays 'R' coloured red, an audible warning will sound and the reverse button 'telltale' lamp will illuminate.



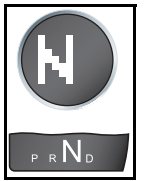
Neutral (N)



Pull back on both gearshift paddles simultaneously to select Neutral. When selecting Neutral (N) from Park (P) the brake pedal must be depressed.

*If the brake pedal is not pressed the message centre (right) will display '**Press Brake Pedal**'.*

The message centre (left) displays the current position and the GPID displays 'N'.



Drive (D)

The engine cannot be started in this position.



Pull back on either the '+' or '–' gearshift paddles, with the brake pedal depressed, to select Drive. The message centre (left) will display the current position and the GPID will display the current gear, i.e. '**2**' and **'Touch'** and the drive button 'telltale' lamp will go out.



If the brake pedal is not pressed the message centre (right) will display 'Press Brake Pedal'.

If no driver input is detected the transmission will automatically upshift and downshift to remain within operating limits of the engine and transmission (except when in Sport mode (Refer to 'Sport Mode', page 5.10)).

*If the vehicle speed is less than approximately 5 km/h (3 m.p.h.), **D** may be selected from **R**, without pressing the brake pedal. This enables a vehicle 'rocking' motion, i.e. to enable vehicle movement out of mud, snow, etc.*

Driving (Touchtronic Mode)

Start the engine and select **Touchtronic** mode.

Apply the footbrake then pull back either the '+' or '–' gearshift paddles.

Check the message centre (left) and the GPID for correct position and gear.

Check that the handbrake is released. Gradually increase engine speed to move off. Upshift by pulling and releasing the '+' paddle and downshift by pulling and releasing the '–' paddle. Upshifts and downshifts will automatically occur if the engine speed rises or lowers to the maximum or minimum operating limits (unless the transmission is in Sport mode (Refer to 'Sport Mode', page 5.10)).

*At any point while in **Touchtronic** mode press the **D** button to enter Auto mode.*

To bring the vehicle to a halt, press the brake pedal and downshift as required.

When the vehicle is stationary the transmission will select 1st gear, ready to move off immediately when the accelerator is pressed.

The transmission will automatically downshift if no driver input is detected.

To stop the engine, press **P**, apply the handbrake and move the vehicle key to position '0' (ignition OFF).

If unable to engage P a warning will appear in the message centre (right) and a audible warning will sound.

Selecting Reverse

Bring the vehicle to a halt, press the brake pedal and press the **R** button.

*If the brake pedal is not pressed the message centre (right) will display '**Press Brake Pedal**'.*

The button lamp will illuminate red and '**R**' will be displayed, in red, in the GPID. Additionally, an audible warning will sound.

Release the brake pedal. Press the accelerator to move off in reverse.

Deselection of Reverse

Bring the vehicle to a halt. Either select a new gear position from the PRND buttons or pull back on both gearshift paddles to select **N**.

Sport Mode



Sport mode can be selected while in **Auto** or **Touchtronic** modes. Press the **Sport** button once to enter sport mode and press again to exit sport mode.

The Sport mode button lamp will illuminate and '**Sport'** will display in the message centre (left) when sport mode is engaged.

*If selecting **Sport** mode while in Auto **D** – top gear (6th) a downshift to 5th gear will occur. This will not happen if cruise control is active.*

When **Sport** mode is engaged while in **Auto** mode upshifts and downshifts occur at higher engine speeds to provide a sportier drive.

When Sport mode is engaged while in **Touchtronic** mode, automatic upshifts are inhibited.

To inform the driver that the current gear has reached it's upper rev. limit the GPID gear indication will change from green to flashing red.



Maximum Engine Speed

The maximum safe engine speed is 7,200 r.p.m. If this speed is exceeded, fuel supply to the engine is reduced. As the engine speed reduces back to a safe level, fuel supply is progressively restored.

Fault Conditions

Park (P) Override

If the vehicle fails to start or has broken down the automatic transmission will move into Park (**P**). To tow or move the vehicle a 'park override' lever is provided to manually disengage the automatic transmission park lock.

Apply the handbrake before operating the park override. There is the danger that the vehicle will roll, depending on the incline of the road.

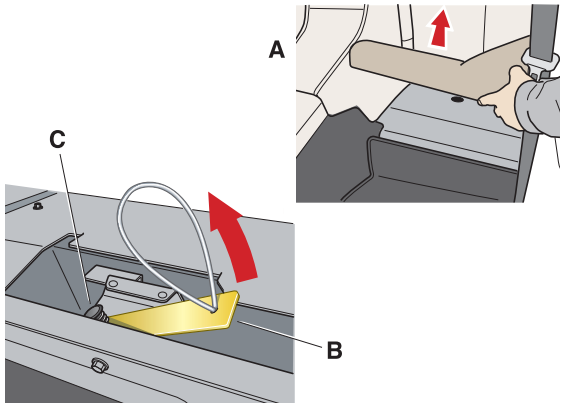
Operating the Park Override

Apply the handbrake. Remove the LH rear seat base (A) and unscew the two screws that secure the park override lever cover. Remove the cover.

Pull the manual park override lever (B) fully up on the ratchet, fully releasing the parking lock.

After towing or moving the vehicle apply the handbrake. Lift the manual park override lever slightly, press the ratchet release (C) and lower the manual park override lever back to the stop. The parking lock is now engaged. Install the cover and the rear seat base.

The message in the instrument pack must disappear and the position display must change from N to P. Otherwise there is the danger that the vehicle will roll away.



Limp-home Mode

If a fault is detected in the 'Shift by Wire' system the vehicle will go into 'Limp Home' mode. There are three types of 'Limp Home'.

Electrical - 'Gearbox Fault Reduced Function' will be displayed in the message centre (right). Touchtronic and Sport modes will be disabled. Gearshifts will still be possible but shift quality will be degraded.

*In certain circumstances **D** will be restricted to 3rd gear. If travelling at speed 3rd gear will engage when an appropriate speed has been reached.*

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Reduced Engine Performance - 'Reduced Engine Perform' will display in the message centre (right). Engine performance will be restricted. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Mechanical - 'Limphome No Gear Change Possible' will display in the message centre (right) and an audible warning will sound. If travelling forwards in **D** or **D Touch** the vehicle will go into a locked gear (3rd or 5th depending on vehicle speed).

Do not attempt to change position while in mechanical limp home mode, i.e. pressing either P, R, N, D or pulling back on both gear shift paddles simultaneously. If this request is detected at a speed below approximately 20 km/h (12.5 m.p.h.) the engine will stop and the parking lock will engage.

At a speed above approximately 20 km/h (12.5 m.p.h.) the request and any other transmission request will be rejected and the vehicle will continue in 3rd or 5th.

If entering mechanical limp home mode in any position other than **D**, **D Touch** (forward gears) the park lock will engage (Refer to 'Park (P) Override', page 5.11). Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

The manual transmission features a six speed gearbox.





Gearshifts

Press the clutch pedal, move the gear lever to the required gear position then slowly raise the clutch pedal.

Reverse gear is selected by overcoming spring resistance.

A red '**R**' will show in the GSID when the transmission is in reverse.



To inform the driver that the current gear has reached it's upper rev. limit the GSID will indicate revs increasing. To avoid hitting the rev. limiter shift gear before the GSID fully illuminates or as it fully illuminates.



For the first 2000 km (1243 mile) and when ever the engine temperature is below 40°C (104°F) the shift control will indicate early shift changes to protect the engine.

Maximum Engine Speed

The maximum safe engine speed is 7,200 rpm. If this speed is exceeded, fuel supply to the engine is reduced. As the engine speed reduces back to a safe level, fuel supply is progressively restored.

Footbrake

The footbrake operates through a vacuum boosted, dual (diagonal split) circuit, hydraulic system incorporating an Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).

⚠ Warning ⚠

In the event of a brake failure bring the vehicle to a halt as soon as it is safe to do so. Do not continue to drive.

If vacuum boost fails or one circuit fails the footbrake will still operate but with greater pedal pressure, increased pedal travel and longer stopping distances.

After a long drive over salted or gritted roads or if driving in heavy rain, through water or a car wash, the braking action may be delayed and increased braking pressure may be required.

Vacuum boost is only available while the engine is running.

Brake Warnings

While driving, if the brake warning lamp (!) BRAKE illuminates, it indicates either that:

- The handbrake is not fully released
- The brake pads require regular maintenance
- The brake fluid level has fallen below an acceptable level

A warning message will show in the message centre (right).

Stop, as soon as possible in a safe and convenient place. Apply the footbrake and ensure that the handbrake is fully released. If the handbrake is fully released and the lamp remains ON, **do not drive** the vehicle. Contact the nearest Aston Martin Dealer. It is essential that the brake system is checked immediately, preferably by an Aston Martin Dealer.

⚠ Warning ⚠

If the brake warning lamp illuminates, you should immediately be prepared for possible increased stopping distances and possible partial failure of the braking system.

Brake Squeal

The high performance brake system used on this vehicle is designed to provide optimal braking under all operating conditions. However, under all driving conditions an inherent characteristic of this braking system is some brake noise, i.e. wire brush noise.

Certain combinations of speed, braking forces and ambient conditions may cause the brakes to squeal.

Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS)

The anti-lock braking system (ABS) helps prevent the road wheels from locking and skidding during emergency braking. This also assists the driver in maintaining steering and directional stability.

If, in an emergency braking situation, the braking force applied begins to exceed the tyre to road adhesion, the ABS is activated to prevent the road wheels locking. When this happens a pulsating effect is felt through the brake pedal. This is a normal ABS effect.

Safety

In all cases it remains the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions. The fact that a vehicle is equipped with ABS must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users.

The addition of ABS cannot overcome the consequences of trying to stop in too short a distance, cornering at too high a speed, or the risk of aquaplaning (where the tyres are prevented from contacting the road surface by a layer of water).

The driver should always take road conditions into account. A slippery road surface always requires more braking distance for a given speed, even with ABS. Possible extensions of stopping distance compared to locked wheels may occur during ABS operation on slushy snow, gravel, sand or certain heavily corrugated or ridged warning sections of road surfaces.

If any braking system malfunction occurs, immediately have the Braking and ABS systems checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.

ABS Warning

⚠ Warning ⚠

If the ABS warning lamp illuminates, you should be aware that wheels could lock during extreme braking or when braking on slippery surfaces.

ABS is monitored for correct operation while the ignition is switched ON. If a fault is detected, the ABS warning lamp (ABS) will illuminate and the ABS will be partly or fully disabled.

Normal braking will continue to function without ABS.

In the event of an ABS fault, consult your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

Handbrake

Always fully apply the handbrake before leaving the vehicle.

To apply the handbrake:

1. Press the footbrake pedal firmly.
2. While pressing the footbrake pedal, pull the handbrake lever up until resistance is felt. At this point depress the handbrake button and continue to pull the handbrake lever up to it's fullest extent.
3. Release the button and allow the handbrake lever to lower.

If the ignition is ON the handbrake warning light on the instrument cluster will illuminate, indicating that the handbrake is applied. (!) BRAKE

To release the handbrake:



1. Press the footbrake pedal firmly.
2. While pressing the footbrake pedal, pull the handbrake lever up until resistance is felt, then depress the release button and push the handbrake lever down.

If the handbrake lever is not fully off, the handbrake warning light (!) BRAKE will stay ON.

Always check that the brake warning lamp is correctly extinguished before moving off. Do not attempt to drive the vehicle if the brake warning lamp remains ON.

An audible warning will sound if the vehicle is moving and the handbrake is still applied.

- If the vehicle is parked on a hill and facing **uphill**, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the kerb
- If the vehicle is parked on a hill and facing **downhill**, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel towards the kerb

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)

⚠ *Warning* ⚠

It is the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions.

⚠ *Warning* ⚠

DSC must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users. DSC cannot overcome consequences of applying too much engine power for prevailing conditions.

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is a system designed to enhance driving safety by improving the vehicle handling when the tyres are at the limits of their grip capabilities. This is achieved through the reduction of engine torque and strategic application of the brakes at individual wheels.

Driver Interface and Control



The DSC system is switched ON when the engine is started. When the system is operating, the DSC warning lamp will flash.

DSC can be switched 'OFF' by pressing the DSC switch for a minimum of four seconds.

The DSC button lamp and the DSC symbol (instrument pack) will illuminate continuously when the system is switched OFF.

'DSC FUNCTION OFF' will be displayed in the message centre (right) to indicate that DSC is OFF.

Press and release the DSC switch again to switch the DSC 'ON'.

Use tyres of the same manufacturer, brand, tread pattern and correct size specified for this vehicle on all four road wheels. Do not mix worn tyres.

The DSC may not operate correctly when using tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre.

If repair or replacement of the steering or other surrounding equipment is necessary, always refer to your Aston Martin Dealer. If the centre position of the steering deviates, the DSC may not operate correctly because there is a sensor in the steering which detects steering wheel position.

Fault Indication

A malfunction in the DSC control system will be indicated by the following:

- The DSC lamp in the instrument cluster will illuminate continuously
- A warning message will be displayed in the message centre (right) depending on the fault detected

If vehicle cruise control is engaged it will automatically disengage when traction control is operating.

Traction Control

⚠ Warning ⚠

It is the drivers responsibility to drive safely according to the law and with due regard to prevailing conditions.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Traction Control must never allow the driver to be tempted into taking risks which could affect his or her safety or that of other road users.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Traction Control cannot overcome consequences of applying too much engine power for prevailing conditions.

Traction control is a function of DSC, and is operated in association with the DSC system.

Traction control prevents excessive wheel-spin at standing starts, or during acceleration. Wheel-spin is usually caused by excessive use of the accelerator pedal, or slippery, loose or bumpy road surfaces.

To prevent excessive wheel-spin and maintain vehicle stability in such situations the traction control system will:

- Brake the driven-wheel when it starts to slip
- And / or adapt the engine torque to a level corresponding to the traction available on the road surface

These symptoms are normal and will clear as wheel spin is eliminated and normal engine power is restored.

During activation, the DSC warning lamp will flash. The driver may experience a loss in power or temporary 'misfire' as engine power is reduced.

If traction control cuts in when driving on extended icy or slippery surfaces, reduce engine power as necessary until the DSC warning lamp is extinguished.

Do not maintain engine power at such a level that traction control is activated for long periods (more than about one minute). This reduces fuel to the engine and may cause the exhaust catalysts to overheat. Overheating of the exhaust catalysts can destroy them.

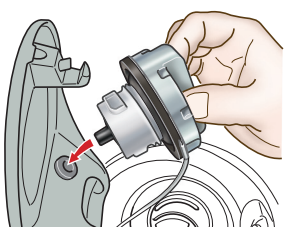
Traction control is always operational when DSC is ON.

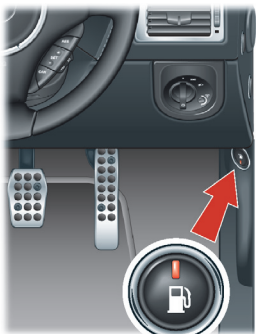
Fuel Filling

Open the fuel flap by pressing the fuel flap release switch.

The vehicle alarm must be OFF to enable the fuel flap release switch.

Rotate the cap anticlockwise past resistance, then lift off. Place the cap into it's holder.





Install the cap by turning clockwise past resistance, until three 'clicks' are felt as the cap is fully tightened. Close and latch the fuel flap.

The fuel tank filler neck has a restricted opening which will only accommodate the fuel supply nozzle of unleaded fuel pumps.

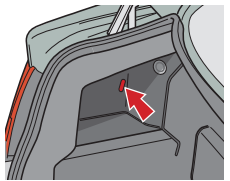
The fuel system will not permit overfill but there will be instances when the nozzle will shut OFF prematurely. If this happens wait five seconds after nozzle shut OFF before trying to re-initiate fill.

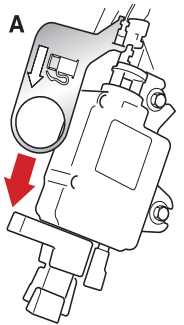
Fuel Cutoff

In the event of a vehicle accident the vehicle will enter Crash mode. Power to the fuel pumps will terminate, thereby reducing fire risk.

Filler Flap Emergency Release

If the filler flap will not open when the release switch is pressed, open the filler flap manually (Refer to 'Filler Flap Emergency Release', page 4.18).





Catalytic Converters

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not park over dry grass, leaves or other combustible material. Significant fire risk exists because of residual heat in the catalytic converters.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not drive through deep water. Rapid cooling of catalysts may cause them to break up.

Catalytic convertors convert harmful exhaust gasses into less noxious substances and so reduce environmental pollution.

They operate at high temperatures and continue to radiate a considerable amount of heat after turning OFF the engine.

Leaded fuel will cause irreparable damage to catalytic converters. If leaded fuel is inadvertently added to the fuel tank **do not start the engine, do not drive the vehicle**. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer immediately.

Rear Parking Assist

⚠ Warning ⚠

Rear parking assist does not replace need for total vigilance and caution when parking or reversing.

Rear parking assist assists in detecting obstructions as the vehicle is reversed towards them. The system is active when reverse gear is selected. When the system is operating an intermittent 'beep' signal will be heard. The 'beep' increases in persistence as the vehicle reverses to an obstruction.

The 'beeps' start at approximately 1.7 m (5.5 ft.) from any obstruction. The 'beep' becomes continuous at distances less than 30 cm (1 ft.).

Front and Rear Parking Assist (Option)

It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the car's distance from them. Some overhanging objects, barriers, thin obstructions or painted surfaces which could possibly cause damage to the vehicle may not be detected by the system. Always be vigilant when reversing.

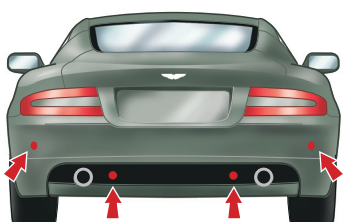
The parking assist system provides an audible warning, when driving forwards or rearwards, if objects are detected within range of the vehicle.

If, for example, you are driving within a confined space such as a home garage, the outer sensors will detect the side walls and after three seconds will switch the tone OFF. However, as movement continues, the inner sensors will eventually detect the rear wall and will start the tone again.

When parking or reversing make full use of rearward vision and all mirrors to be aware of persons or objects in the vicinity of the vehicle. Take appropriate measures to protect them from danger.

In heavy rain or similar adverse conditions, the rear parking assist sensors may not always be able to accurately measure distance to close objects. A fully laden vehicle or irregular obstacles may also cause inaccurate measurements.

The parking sensors should be kept clear of dirt, snow etc. to ensure clean signals and accurate distance monitoring.



*If reversing into a confined area, i.e. a home garage, the rear parking assist **outer** sensors will detect the side walls and, after three seconds, the 'Beep' sequence will stop. As reversing continues the rear parking assist **inner** sensors will detect the rear wall / obstruction and the 'Beep' sequence will start again.*

Press the parking assist button to disable rear parking assist. The rear parking assist button will illuminate when the system is **disabled**.

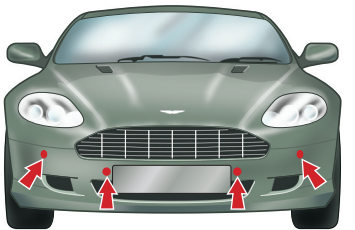


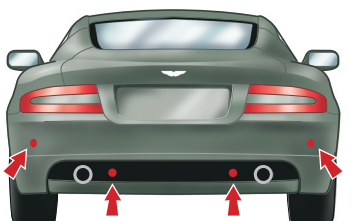
The rear sensors are not active when the gear selector is in neutral, therefore care should be taken if moving the vehicle as the tone will not sound.

Do not clean the sensors with abrasive or sharp objects.

For reliable operation, the sensors in the front and rear bumpers should be kept free from ice, frost and grime.

When using a high pressure spray the sensors should only be sprayed briefly and not from a distance of less than 200 mm (eight inches). Do not clean the sensors with abrasive materials.



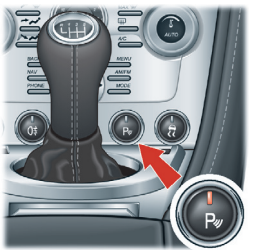


Operation

The Parking assist system defaults to inactive when the ignition is switched ON.

The system becomes active when reverse gear is selected, or if the Parking Assist switch is pressed at speeds below 15 km/h (9 m.p.h.).

The system will switch OFF when the vehicle moves forwards above 15 km/h
(9 m.p.h.).



The parking switch LED will illuminate when the system is turned ON. The LED will blink if a fault is detected in the system.

In heavy rain or similar adverse conditions, the rear parking assist sensors may not always be able to accurately measure distance to close objects. A fully laden vehicle or irregular obstacles may also cause inaccurate measurements.

If the system has a fault, when engaging reverse gear or turning the ignition ON, then a single three second tone will be heard (only once per ignition cycle) and the parking assist switch LED will blink. The system is automatically disabled when a fault is detected.

Parking assist may sound spurious tones if it detects an ultrasonic frequency using the same band as the sensors.

If an obstacle is detected at the front or rear of the vehicle, a series of beeps will be heard from the front or rear speaker respectively, which increases in rate as the vehicle nears the obstacle.

The system consists of inner and outer sensors.

When manoeuvring forward into a Garage, etc., the front outer sensors will cease detection if they detect a stationary or receding object for three seconds or more, this allows detection directly at the front of the vehicle in this type of manoeuvre.

The beep becomes a continuous tone when an obstacle is detected at or within approximately 300 mm (12 inches) from the rear or 250 mm (10 inches) from the front of the vehicle.

Driving Techniques

Procedures for driving this vehicle may be unfamiliar to many new owners. Please take time to safely acquire the necessary new driving skills. Practise in safe, lower speed conditions before investigating the high performance potential of the vehicle. Please ensure a safe and enjoyable entry into this new phase of Aston Martin motoring.

Performance Driving Courses are available to enable customers not only to understand the control functions of their vehicle but also the basic principles of Performance Driving.

Please contact your Aston Martin Dealer for further information.

Wet Conditions

When driving in wet conditions, water can build up under your tyres so that they ride on a layer of water. This is called aquaplaning or hydroplaning. When this happens, you have little or no control.

Aquaplaning is more prone to happening at higher road speeds if there is a lot of water on the road and particularly if the tyres are also under inflated or approaching minimum tread depth.

It is important to take bends or curves at a safe, reasonable speed, particularly when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

Slow down when it is raining.

Driving Through Deep Water

If in any doubt whether to drive through deep water, always take the side of caution to avoid potentially costly damage to the vehicle's engine or other essential systems.

If driving on flooded roads, through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed with extreme caution, especially when the depth is not known. Never drive in water deeper than the lower edge of the front bumper.

Water can be splashed up into the engine air intakes located in the front upper grille and cause extensive damage to the engine or the vehicle may stall.

Waves caused by other vehicles or natural causes can also splash water in the engine air intakes.

Running-In

This vehicle is fully hot tested during manufacture and no special running-in procedures are necessary. Nevertheless it is prudent to limit engine loads (e.g. by accelerating gently and by using lower gears on steep hills or when negotiating tight turns) during the first 1,600 km (1,000 mile).

Overspeed Warning 'Gong' (Middle East only)

If vehicle speed reaches 120 km/h (74.5 m.p.h.) a warning 'gong' will sound. This warning will continue until either the vehicle speed goes beyond 130 km/h (81 m.p.h.) or the vehicle speed falls below 117 km/h (73 m.p.h.).

If the vehicle speed has increased beyond 130Km/h (81 m.p.h.) the warning 'gong' will not sound again until the vehicle speed has fallen below 120 km/h (74.5 m.p.h.) and then increased to 120km/h (74.5 m.p.h.) or greater.

Headlamp Levelling

The weight of items placed in the boot and passengers may change the beam angle of the headlamps. The headlamps are continuously monitored and automatically adjusted to compensate.

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Convertible Roof (Volante)

Contents

Roof Operation 6.2
Opening the Convertible Roof 6.4
Closing the Convertible Roof 6.5
Manual Operation 6.5
Roof Maintenance 6.8
Deployable Rollbars 6.9
Wind Deflector 6.10

Roof Operation

⚠ *Warning* ⚠

Misuse of the Convertible Roof switch, especially by children, can result in injury due to entrapment in the Convertible Roof mechanism and locking points.

⚠ *Warning* ⚠

Before closing or opening the Convertible Roof, ensure that all occupants are clear of the Convertible Roof linkage, the windscreen frame, door windows and rear quarter windows.

Aston Martin recommend that the Convertible Roof is not operated at temperatures below 0°C (32°F).

Before closing or opening the Convertible Roof, ensure that there are no objects placed on the rear sloping deck area which could interfere with the folded, stored Convertible Roof, especially the heated rear windscreen glass. Even small objects can cause damage.

Ensure that the Convertible Roof is always fully closed or fully opened.

Do not store objects / items in the Convertible Roof storage area.

Any objects / items stored there may cause damage to the Convertible Roof when attempting to open it. Even small objects can cause damage.

Do not attempt to open the Convertible Roof if any objects are laying on top of the Convertible Roof.

Continuous use of the Convertible Roof without the engine running will cause the vehicle battery to rapidly discharge.

Avoid repetitive use of the Convertible Roof. This may cause the operating system to over heat and engage the thermal cut out. If this happens, wait ten minutes for the operating system to cool down before operating the roof.

Due to wind pressure when driving at very high speeds the door windows may not close correctly.

The Convertible Roof operation switch is located on the centre console.

If at any time during the opening or closing of the Convertible Roof the switch is released – the Convertible Roof will stop immediately.





'**Roof Movement Paused**' will appear in the message centre (right) and a continuous audible warning will sound until the Convertible Roof continues to open or close.

As soon as it is safe to do so continue the roof movement. If the roof is left in 'Pause', after a short time hydraulic pressure will be lost. The roof and tonneau lid will relax and, gently, fall back.

Conditions for Operating the Roof

- The boot must be shut

The boot will lock and will remain inhibited during Convertible Roof opening / closing operations.

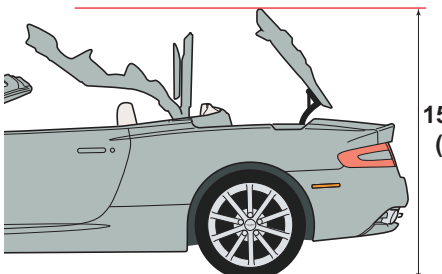
- The ignition must be ON (engine running or not)
- The vehicle speed must be at '0' km/h

⚠ Warning ⚠

Only operate the roof when the vehicle is stationary with the handbrake applied, and the gear selector in P or N (Automatic) or Neutral (Manual).

- Sufficient headroom is available for the Convertible Roof to close or open.

Minimum headroom required to close or open the Convertible Roof.



Moving Off While Operating the Convertible Roof

⚠ Warning ⚠

Keep the vehicle road speed down to a minimum until the Convertible Roof has completed it's operation.

If the vehicle starts to move while the Convertible Roof is being closed / opened, Convertible Roof movement will continue, while the close / open switch remains pressed, until the Convertible Roof has locked in the closed or opened position. '**Road Speed Exceeded for Roof**' will display in the message centre (right).

Operating the Convertible Roof while Driving

If attempting to close / open the Convertible Roof while driving the warning message '**Road Speed Exceeded for Roof**' will display in the message centre (right) and Convertible Roof movement will not be allowed until the vehicle speed has fallen to 0 km/h.

Rear Quarter Windows

The rear quarter windows only operate as part of the Convertible Roof movement sequence. They can not be operated separately.

Opening the Convertible Roof

⚠ Warning ⚠

Roof movement has not finished and locked until 'Roof Movement Complete' appears in the message centre (right).

Ensure that there is sufficient headroom for the Convertible Roof to be closed (1531mm (60 in)).

Push the Convertible Roof switch forwards and hold until '**Roof Movement Complete**' appears in the message centre (right).





If the door windows are required to be closed continue to press the switch after '**Roof Movement Complete**' appears until the door windows have closed.

Closing the Convertible Roof

⚠ *Warning* ⚠

Roof movement has not finished and locked until 'Roof Movement Complete' appears in the message centre (right).

Ensure that there is sufficient headroom for the Convertible Roof to be closed (1531mm (60 in)).

Pull the Convertible Roof switch rearwards and hold until '**Roof Movement Complete**' appears in the message centre (right).





Manual Operation

In the unlikely event of the Convertible Roof failing during closing or opening (after the locks have released), the Convertible Roof can be manually closed and locked.

Vehicle Security.

If the Convertible Roof fails always close and lock the Convertible Roof.

Do not open the Convertible Roof. Roof and Convertible Roof cover locks will not be available.

*The message '**Roof Fail**' will show in the message centre (right).*

Closing the Roof Manually

The assistance of a second person may be required to close the Convertible Roof manually.

If the Convertible Roof fails, remove the vehicle key and wait for a minimum of five seconds.

⚠ *Warning* ⚠

Keep fingers clear of the Convertible Roof linkage when moving the Convertible Roof manually.

During this time the Convertible Roof hydraulics will relax allowing manual movement of the Convertible Roof. Some hydraulic fluid resistance will still be present in the operating rams. It may take considerable effort to fully close the Convertible Roof manually.

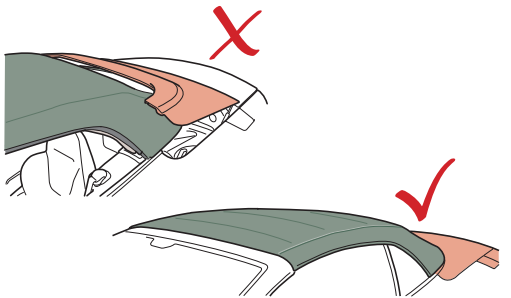
If the tonneau lid has unlocked and the Convertible Roof rear is underneath.

Manually lift the tonneau lid. Continue to hold the tonneau lid while closing the Convertible Roof. When the Convertible Roof rear has cleared the tonneau lid, let the tonneau lid slowly fall to close. Slowly raise the Convertible Roof to meet the top of the windscreen. The rear of the Convertible Roof will lay in position on the edge of the tonneau lid.

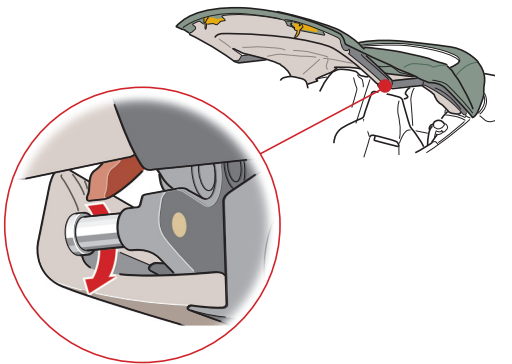
Do not allow the tonneau lid to rest on the Convertible Roof fabric.

If the tonneau lid is closed with the Convertible Roof rear on top.

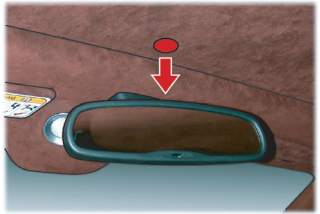
Manually raise the Convertible Roof to the fully closed position.



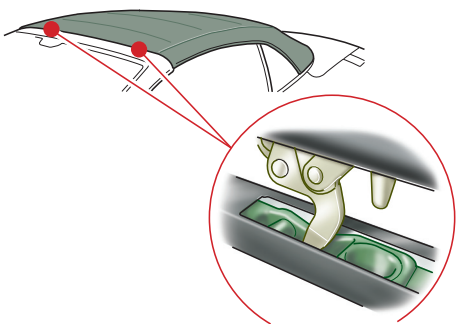
Ensure that the hook on the last Convertible Roof joint engages correctly on both sides.



Remove the trim plug.



Ensure the two lock arms are located in their catches.

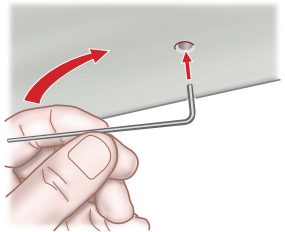


Locking the Convertible Roof manually may require the assistance of a second person to push down so the catches engage while the allen key is turned.

Using the allen key provided in the vehicle tool kit, lock the Convertible Roof in position.

Many turns of the allen key will be required to lock the Convertible Roof.

Continue to turn the allen key until no more movement is possible.



'**Roof Movement Paused**' will appear in the message centre (right) and a continuous 'beep' will activate until the Convertible Roof has been locked.



Rear Quarter Windows

Depending on the reason why the Convertible Roof fails, the rear quarter windows may not close when closing the Convertible Roof manually.

When the Convertible Roof has been manually closed and locked, switch the ignition to ON and attempt to close the rear quarter windows by operating the Convertible Roof close switch.



Roof Maintenance

If the Convertible Roof is left for prolonged periods in the opened position (folded), in certain circumstances permanent soiling along folds may occur in the Convertible Roof fabric.

Do not leave the Convertible Roof in the opened (folded) position for longer than necessary.

Do not use automatic vehicle washes. Brushes, detergents and pressurised water jets may damage the Convertible Roof fabric.

Do not use power washers. Jets of water may damage the weather seals and the Convertible Roof fabric.

Do not use spot cleaners, chemical diluents or any organic cleaners. If in doubt, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Roof Fabric Maintenance

(Refer to 'Convertible Roof Fabric (Volante)', page 11.42)

Deployable Rollbars

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not place any objects on the top of the deployable rollbar covers behind the rear seat backs.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not allow any person to sit on the deployable rollbar covers at any time.

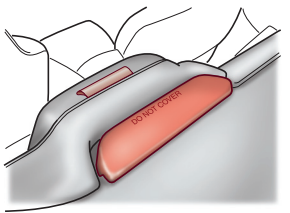
⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not attempt to service or modify the deployable rollbar system.

The Volante is equipped with a deployable rollbar system, which is in addition to and independent of the airbag system.

The deployable rollbar system and the airbag system react independently. The deployable rollbars and the airbags may deploy together or alone, depending on the type of impact.

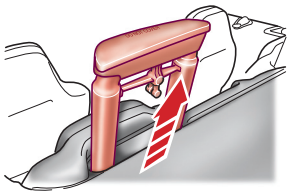
The deployable rollbar system comprises an electronic roll sensor unit integrated into the main crash sensor and two 'U' shaped roll bars, concealed behind the rear seat, which will deploy in the unlikely event of the vehicle rolling over.



The electronic roll sensor constantly monitors the vehicle attitude and road loads.

On sensing an impending roll over situation the electronic roll sensor sends a signal to the deployable rollbars, triggering a release.

The deployable rollbars then extend upward.



⚠ Warning ⚠

If the roof is closed the deployable rollbars will break through the rear glass.

Extreme manoeuvres may cause the system to predict a roll over and deploy the rollbars for protection of the occupants. If such driving events are anticipated by the customer (e.g. Track day driving) the Convertible Roof should be retracted to allow the rollbars to deploy without damaging the vehicle.

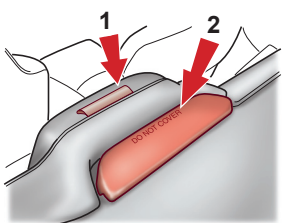
⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not attempt to reset the deployable rollbar system after it has deployed. It is a 'single use' system, if reset it will not deploy a second time.

If the deployable rollbar system has been deployed, proceed to your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.

Warning Labels

The following warning labels are located on the deployable rollbar system,



1 'Rollbar'
2 'Do Not Cover'

Wind Deflector

A wind deflector can be installed to enhance comfort when driving with the Convertible Roof down.

- Wind noise and turbulence are greatly reduced
- Heat retention is increased, offering open air cruising on colder days
- It easily installs to existing mounts within your vehicle
- The wind deflector can be left in place with the Convertible Roof closed or opened and stores easily within the boot
- Easily folded and stowed away when not used

Take care when adjusting the driver or passenger seat position with the wind deflector installed. Ensure that the seats do not come into contact the wind deflector.

The wind deflector is not designed as a load carrier. Do not place objects / items on the wind deflector in either the closed or opened position.

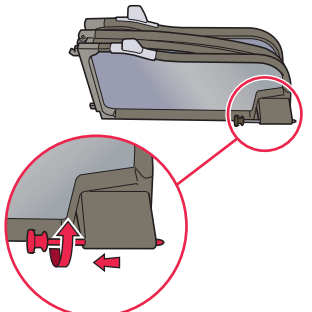
Storage

When the wind deflector is not required, remove it from the vehicle and place it in it's storage bag. Place the storage bag in the vehicle boot.

Installation

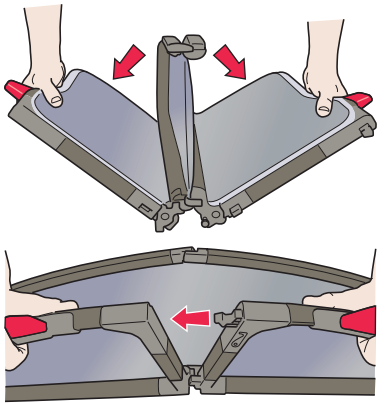
1. Remove the deflector from it's storage bag.

   Ensure that the location pins are retracted. If not retracted pull the pins back and twist (left or right) to lock.

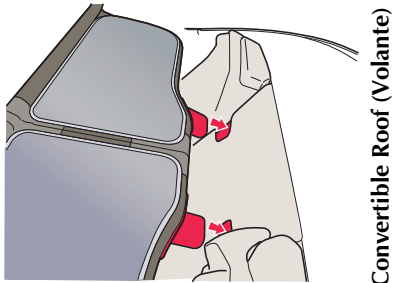


2. Unfold.

3. Open out and 'snap' connect.

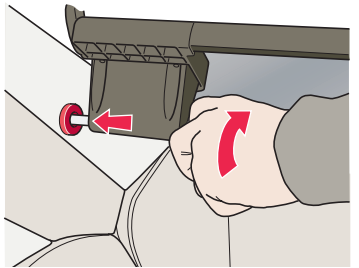


4. Locate the two tabs in to the openings provided in the rear seat backs.



5. With the tabs located line up the location pins and locate the two locking pins either side in the openings provided.

   Twist the pins (left or right) to release and ensure they locate correctly.



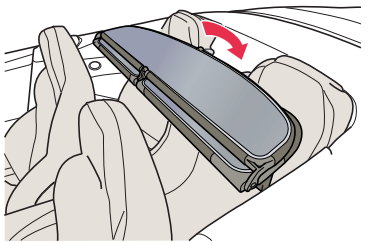
Removal

Remove the wind deflector from the vehicle by reversing the procedure to install.

Operation

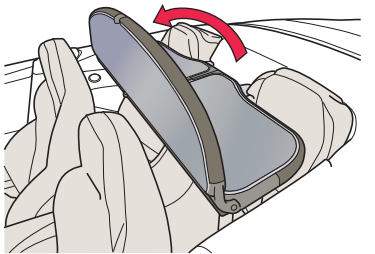
Lowered

Grab the top of the raised section and lower until a locating 'click' is heard.



Raised

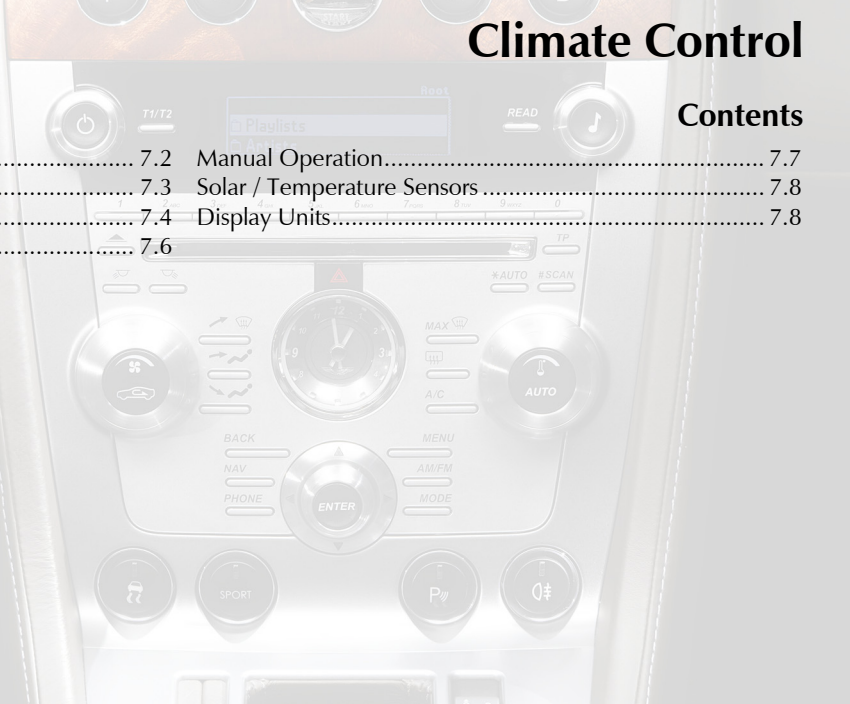
Grab the rear of the top section and pull upwards (90°)untill a locating 'click' is heard.



Climate Control

Contents

Operating Tips 7.2
Control Switches 7.3
Airflow Modes 7.4
Automatic Operation 7.6
Manual Operation 7.7
Solar / Temperature Sensors 7.8
Display Units 7.8



Operating Tips

- A solar sensor is installed on top of the instrument panel, this should not be covered when driving
- The intake grille of the in-vehicle temperature sensor is located in the driver's knee bolster, close to the centre console. To ensure optimum temperature control this grille should not be obstructed
- Moisture which forms on the evaporator in the air conditioning unit is discharged via a drain tube onto the road. After stopping, small puddles of water may form underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a system malfunction
- Operate the climate control system with the engine running
- Clear all obstructions like leaves, snow and ice from the bonnet and the air inlet in the front grille to improve the system efficiency
- Windows may fog up easily in humid weather. Use the climate control system to demist the windows
- To help demist the windows, operate the air conditioner to dehumidify the air
- Use the 'outside air' position in normal conditions. The 'recirculated air' position should be used temporarily when driving on dusty roads or for quick cooling / heating of the interior
- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows to let warm air escape, then close the windows and run the climate control system
- Run the climate control system at least once a month to keep internal parts lubricated
- Have the climate control system checked before the weather gets hot. If the climate control system is low on refrigerant or has a malfunction, consult your Aston Martin Dealer
- The vehicle is equipped with a pollen filter. It is necessary to change the filter periodically as indicated in scheduled maintenance. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer

Control Switches



1 ***DISPLAY -*** Presents options, menus and information.

2 ***MAX***  **-** Press for maximum defrost / demist. Outside air intake is automatically selected and air conditioning is automatically started. Will cease automatically after six minutes.

3 ***TEMPERATURE -*** Set the required in vehicle temperature. Turn clockwise for hot and anticlockwise for cold. The selected temperature is shown on the ***DISPLAY***.

4 ***AUTO -*** Press for automatic climate control operation (Refer to 'Automatic Operation', page 7.6).

5 ***A/C -*** When in Manual mode press and release to turn the air conditioning ON. Press the button again to turn the air conditioning OFF.

6 ***HEATED REAR WINDOW -*** Press to activate the rear window heater. Switches OFF after 20 minutes if not manually switched OFF. When the heated rear window is activated the door mirror heaters will work for 12 minutes, then switch OFF.

7 ***AIR CIRCULATION -*** Controls the source of air entering the vehicle. Press to select recirculated air (button illuminates). Press again to select outside air as source.

Use the recirculated air position when going through tunnels, driving in congested traffic (high engine exhaust areas) or when maximum cooling is required.

On start up the default position is outside air as source. Use this position for normal conditions and demisting.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not select recirculated air in cold or rainy weather, it may cause the interior glass to mist up.

8 ***FAN SPEED -*** Turn the fan speed dial to set the required fan speed (clockwise for fast speed and anticlockwise for low speed). The fan speed is displayed on the ***DISPLAY***.

9 ***AIRFLOW -*** Select the required airflow. The selected air flow mode is shown on the ***DISPLAY*** (Refer to 'Airflow Modes', page 7.4).

Air conditioning may not function when the outside temperature approaches 0°C (32°F) (Indicator remains ON even when system is OFF)

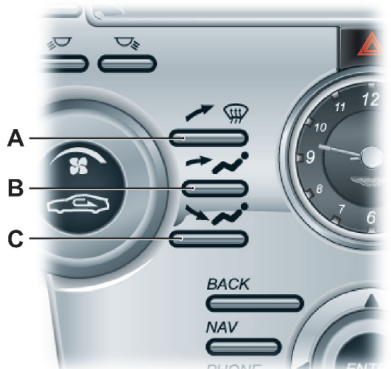
Airflow Modes

Press and release each button to activate / deactivate an airflow mode. By pressing one or more buttons at a time, seven airflow modes are available.

	Mode	Button(s)
1	**Windscreen and Door Windows**[a]	**A**
2	**Face Only**	**B**
3	**Feet Only**[b]	**C**
4	**Windscreen, Door Windows and Face**	**A+B**
5	**Windscreen, Door Windows and Feet**[c]	**A+C**

a. In addition a small bleed of air is directed into the face vents.
b. In addition a small bleed of air is directed to the face vents, the windscreen and door windows.
c. In addition a small bleed of air is directed into the face vents.

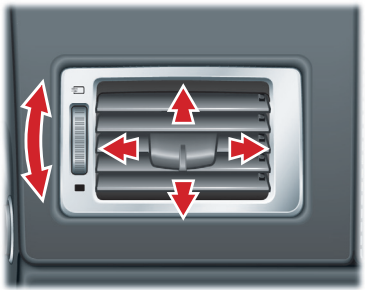
	Mode	Button(s)
6	Face and Feet	B+C
7	Windscreen, Door Windows, Face and Feet	A+B+C





Adjusting the Vents

To adjust the air flow vents:



Automatic Operation

When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.

1. Press ***AUTO***.
2. Using the ***TEMPERATURE*** dial set the required in-vehicle temperature (read the actual temperature setting in the top left hand of the ***DISPLAY***). The ***A/C*** button lamp will illuminate.

Adjustments to fan speed, air flow and air re circulation will be made automatically according to the set temperature and interior / exterior conditions.

If resetting climate control functions other than the fan speed, the fan speed will remain set as in automatic mode. Adjustments to the fan speed will cancel Auto Mode.

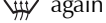
Defrost / Demist

To defrost or demist the windscreen on vehicle start up in extreme cold weather conditions, run the engine at 1500 rpm. Always ensure that Neutral (manual) or Park (automatic) is selected and the handbrake is applied.

1. Press ***MAX***  . The outside air intake is automatically selected, the temperature is set to maximum and A/C is started.

If the engine is cold the A/C will not start up until the engine has started to warm up.

To cancel Automatic defrost or demist either:

- Press ***MAX***  again

or

- Press ***AUTO***

or

- Press any of the airflow mode buttons

MAX *will cease automatically after six minutes.*

Manual Operation

When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.

Heating / Cooling

1. Set the required fan speed.
2. Set the required temperature.
3. Select the required air flow.

The vehicle heater will continue to produce the selected temperature regardless of in-vehicle conditions.

4. If dehumidifying is required, press the ***A/C*** button (the button lamp will illuminate).

*When maximum cooling is required, set the **TEMPERATURE** dial to the extreme cold position and press the **AIR CIRCULATION** button to the re circulated air position ( will show in the **DISPLAY**), then set a fast fan speed.*

5. To cease dehumidifying press ***A/C*** button (the button lamp will switch OFF).

Setting the temperature to maximum high or low will not provide the required temperature at a faster rate.

To prevent cool air blowing from the vents when heating immediately after starting a cold engine, the amount of airflow is reduced until the air warms up.

Defrost / Demist

To defrost or demist the windscreen on vehicle start up in extreme cold weather conditions, run the engine at 1500 rpm. Always ensure that Neutral (manual) or Park (automatic) is selected and the handbrake is applied.

1. Press ***A/C***.
2. Press the  airflow button.

If the engine is cold the A/C will not start up until the engine has started to warm up.

3. Set the required temperature and fan speed.

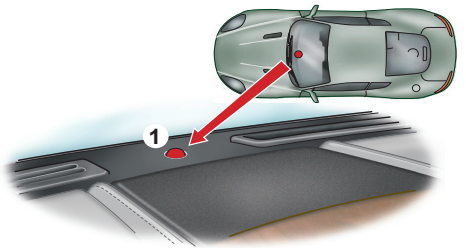
For maximum defrost or demist set the temperature and fan speed dials to maximum.

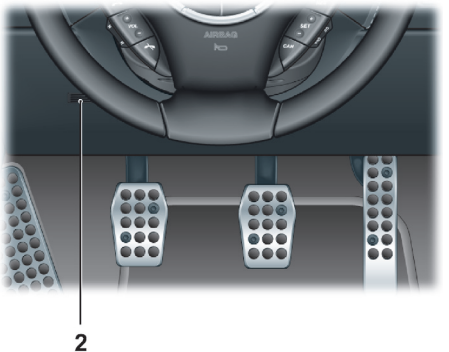
Solar / Temperature Sensors

The automatic air conditioner function measures inside and outside temperatures, and sunlight. It then sets temperatures inside the passenger compartment accordingly. To ensure effective operation do not obscure the following sensors.

1 Solar sensor.

2 In-vehicle temperature sensor.

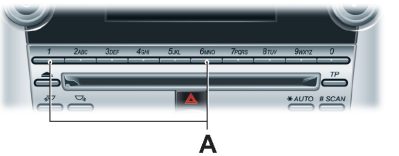




Display Units

To change the display units from °C to °F or °F to °C.

Press and hold in buttons 1 and 6 (A). Insert the vehicle key in the Ignition Control and move to position 'II', then release the two buttons.



Audio

Contents

Introduction 8.2
Audio Essentials 8.2
Radio Functions 8.8
Radio Data System 8.11
Programme Type 8.13
Enhanced Other Networks 8.14
Automatic Frequency Updating 8.14
Regional Radio Programmes 8.15
Resetting Radio Functions 8.15
Radio Menu 8.15
CD Changer Functions 8.16
CD Changer Menu 8.20
iPod / USB Functions 8.20
iPod / USB Menu 8.23
Auxiliary Functions 8.24
Auxiliary Menu 8.26

Introduction

Audio is an integrated part of the Infotainment system along with vehicle Hands-Free phone and Satellite Navigation functions. The infotainment system can be used easily and conveniently using the common control panel. The control panel ***DISPLAY*** indicates the present function.

Audio System

Radio - AM_1 / FM radio. 10 AM and 20 FM presets are available.

CD - Six CD autochanger.

iPod - Connection point.

USB Device - Connection point.

Auxiliary Input - Connection point.

Speakers - Two door-mounted 100W speakers, each with mid-range and tweeter units. Two rear environment 100W speakers (each with mid-range and tweeter units). 100W centre-fill speaker. 200W subwoofer housed under the rear environment LH seat.

Power Output - 700W.

Dolby Pro-Logic II

Audio Essentials

Includes audio ON / OFF, how to navigate through the menus and sound settings.

1. ***ON/OFF -*** Press for audio ON / OFF.
2. ***VOLUME -*** Volume control.
3. ***DISPLAY -*** Presents options, menus and information.
4. ***SOUND -*** Press and hold to enter sound setting mode. Press repeatedly to move though settings. Rotate to set. When in iPod or USB mode a press and release will enable file viewing.
5. ***TUNING -*** Rotate to navigate through menu options.
6. ***MENU -*** Opens the main menu.
7. ***AM/FM -*** Press to select radio as audio source.
8. ***MODE -*** Press repeatedly to select audio source.
9. ***ENTER -*** Select in the menu, activate a selection.

1. Medium Wave (MW) and Long Wave (LW)

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.





10 ***JOYSTICK -***

Left/Right - Set Equaliser levels.

Up/Down - Navigate up / down in the menus.

11 ***BACK -*** Press to move back one action. Press and hold to move back to the default screen.

Steering Wheel Controls

12 ***VOLUME -*** Volume control.

Operation

The audio system is available with the vehicle key at least in position 'I' and remains active until the vehicle key is removed from the Ignition Control.

If the audio system is ON when the vehicle key is removed, it will reactivate automatically the next time the vehicle key is inserted into the Ignition Control and moved to position 'I'.

*The **JOYSTICK**, **ENTER** and **BACK** will not operate if Satellite Navigation is active (**NAV** button illuminated) press the **NAV** button to deactivate Satellite Navigation or press **MENU**, **AM**/**FM** or **MODE** to access these controls.*

Sound Source

To select radio, at any time while the audio system is active, press the ***AM/FM*** button repeatedly to navigate between the radio frequencies.

To select other audio sound sources (CD, iPod, USB, AUX) at any time while the audio system is active, press the ***MODE*** button repeatedly to navigate through the sound source choices.

Battery Protection Mode

Using the Audio system, with the vehicle key at position 'I' (ignition OFF) will drain the battery charge. A warning message will show in the message centre (right) when the battery charge is low (Refer to 'Battery Protection Mode', page 11.28).

Dolby Surround Pro-Logic II

Dolby Surround Pro-Logic II, with its centre speaker in the dashboard, provides more realistic sound reproduction.

The normal left and right stereo channels are divided into left-centre-right. In addition, ambient surround sound is produced through the rear speaker channels.

Dolby Surround Pro-Logic II and the Dolby icon are trade-marks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. The Dolby Pro-Logic II Surround System is manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

Not available in Radio mode.

Menus

The audio menu is only available when audio is active. Press ***ON/OFF*** to activate. Press ***MENU*** to access the main menu. The menu for the active audio source (i.e. radio) will be available.

Search path

Menu paths are indicated for each operation in the following format:

FM Menu... >(ENTER)> Advanced radio settings... >(ENTER)> TP...

The menu selection is followed by a '>' symbol which indicates the next step.

Using the menu:

In this chapter when asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.

- Press the ***JOYSTICK*** up / down to navigate[1]
- Press ***BACK*** to cancel, decline an option, or go back one step in the menu structure
- Press and hold ***BACK*** to cancel, decline an option, and go back to the main screen
- Press ***ENTER*** or ***SOUND*** to confirm, select or navigate from one sub-menu to the next sub-menu
- Use the ***KEYPAD*** numbers as menu short-cuts. Press the number corresponding to the menu number

Several menu options will require a cross in a box [X] to activate an option. Once the menu item is highlighted press ***ENTER*** to either place a cross in the box or delete the cross. Then press and hold ***BACK*** to accept and return to the main screen.

1. The ***TUNING*** dial can also be used.

Selecting a Sound Setting

1. Press and hold ***SOUND*** to enter sound setting mode. Then press repeatedly until the required sound setting is shown on the ***DISPLAY***.
2. Rotate the ***TUNING*** dial to the desired setting.

The level for the centre speaker can only be set if either Dolby Pro-Logic II or 3 Channel has been selected from the sound source menu.

Sound Setting	Shown on the *DISPLAY*
Bass	Bass
Treble	Treble
Balance between the front and rear speakers	Fader
Balance between the left and right hand speakers	Balance
Level for subwoofer	Subwoofer
Level for centre speaker	Centre
Level for surround sound	Surround

Setting the Surround Sound

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to the sound source menu (AM, FM, CD, iPod or AUX)... *>(ENTER)> Audio Settings... >(ENTER)> Surround (AM, FM, CD iPod or AUX)... >(ENTER)>* Select *Dolby Pro-Logic II, 3 Channel* or *Off >(ENTER)*.
3. Press and hold ***BACK*** to return to the main display.

Dolby Pro-Logic II is not available in Radio mode.

The symbol for Dolby Pro-Logic II is shown on the ***DISPLAY*** if Dolby Pro-Logic II is selected. '3CH' is shown on the ***DISPLAY*** if 3 Channel is selected.

Off means the system is in normal stereo mode.

Equalizer

Fine adjustment of the sound from the speakers:

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to the sound source menu (AM, FM, CD, iPod or AUX)... *>(ENTER)> Audio Settings... >(ENTER)> Equalizer... >(ENTER).*
3. Move the ***JOYSTICK*** left / right to set the level. Use the ***JOYSTICK*** up / down to select the next frequency. Five frequencies can be adjusted.
4. Press ***ENTER*** to save any changes and exit. Press ***BACK*** to exit without saving any changes.

Resetting

Resets all sound settings to the original factory settings.

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to sound source menu (AM, FM, CD, iPod or AUX)... *>(ENTER)> Audio settings... >(ENTER)> Reset all... >(ENTER).*
3. Press ***ENTER*** again to confirm.

Volume Control

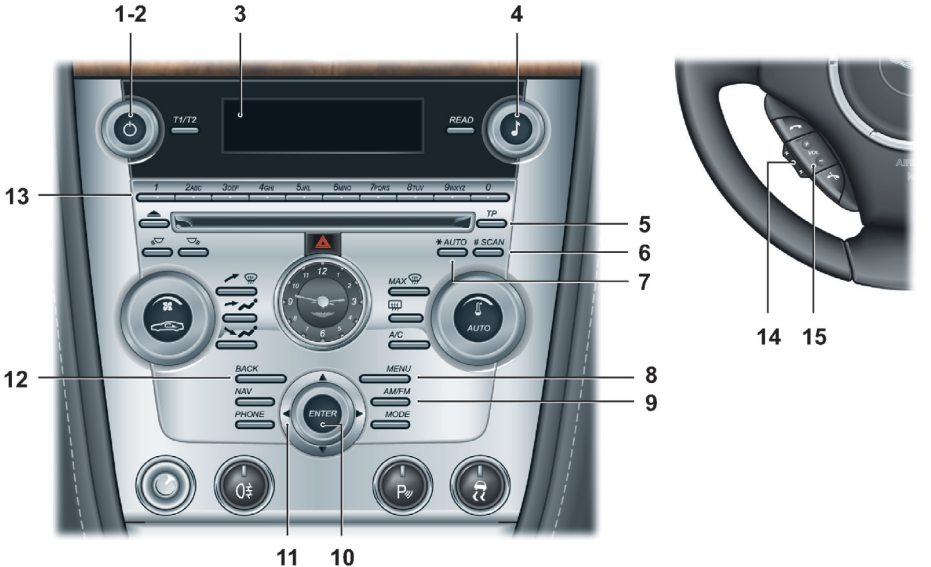
This vehicle has a speed-dependent volume feature known as active sound control (ASC). This adjusts the volume automatically depending on the speed of the vehicle.

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to sound source menu (AM, FM, CD, iPod or AUX)... *>(ENTER)> Audio settings... >(ENTER)> Auto. volume control* > Select *Low, Medium or High >(ENTER).*

Radio Functions

Volume Control for TP, News and Alarms

When the radio receives a traffic announcement, the CD, iPod or USB player will enter pause mode. The announcement is played at the volume selected for that type of message. The system then returns to the volume selected for the CD, iPod or USB player. If the volume is adjusted while the announcement is broadcast, this new volume is saved and used for the next bulletin.



1 ***ON/OFF -*** Audio ON / OFF.

2 ***VOLUME -*** Volume control.

3 ***DISPLAY -*** Presents options, menus and information.

4 ***TUNING -*** Rotate to manually search stations or navigate up / down in the menus.

5 ***TP -*** Press to enable traffic broadcasts. Press again to disable.

6 ***SCAN -*** Find and store the strongest stations.

7 ***AUTO -*** Automatic station search.

8 ***MENU -*** Opens the main menu.

9 ***AM/FM -*** Shift between FM1, FM2 and AM.

10 ***ENTER -*** Select in the menu, activate a selection.

11 ***JOYSTICK -***

Left / ***Right -*** Press left or right to auto search the next station. Press and hold left or right to manually select a station.

Up / ***Down -*** Navigate up / down in the menus or preset stations.

12 ***BACK -*** Press to navigate back one in the menu. Press and hold to navigate back to the default screen. Cancel a selection.

13 ***KEYPAD -*** Set station presets and menu short-cuts.

Steering Wheel Controls

14 ***SCROLL -*** Navigate up / down through the preset radio stations.

15 ***VOLUME -*** Volume control.

Automatic Tuning

1. Select FM1, FM2 or AM using the ***AM/FM*** button.
2. Press the ***JOYSTICK*** left / right to search for the next strong station.
3. Press left / right again to initiate a new search.

If no stations are found press either button again to cancel.

Manual Tuning

There are two ways to tune into a station manually.

- Rotate the ***TUNING*** dial to set the desired frequency.
- Press and hold the ***JOYSTICK*** left / right.

  The frequency rolls slowly in the selected direction and increases speed after a few seconds.

  Release the button when the desired frequency appears on the ***DISPLAY***. If the frequency needs adjusting, briefly touch one of the arrows.

Storing Stations

10 stations can be stored for FM1, FM2 or AM (a total of 30 stations).

To store stations:

1. Tune to the desired station.
2. Press and hold the ***KEYPAD*** button (0-9) where the station is to be stored. The sound will be muted for a couple of seconds and 'Station Stored' will show on the ***DISPLAY***.
3. Select a stored station by either pressing a ***KEYPAD*** (0 to 9) button or use the ***SCROLL*** button to scroll up or down the station list.

Autostoring Stations

Up to ten AM or FM stations can be automatically tuned and stored in a separate memory.

If more than ten stations are found, the ten strongest are selected. This function is particularly useful if you are in an area in which you are unfamiliar with the radio stations and their frequencies.

1. Select FM1, FM2 or AM using the ***AM/FM*** button.
2. Start the search by pressing and holding ***AUTO*** (more than two seconds).

   'Autostoring.' appears on the ***DISPLAY*** and a number of strong stations (max. 10) from the selected frequency band are stored in the autostore memory. It there are no stations that are sufficiently strong, 'No AST Found' appears on the ***DISPLAY***.

The stations are stored on the ***KEYPAD*** (buttons 0-9). When the radio is in autostore mode, 'Autostoring' is shown on the ***DISPLAY***.

Return to the ordinary radio mode by pressing and releasing ***AUTO*** (less than 0.7 seconds). Pressing and releasing either ***AUTO*** or ***BACK*** will also cancel Autostoring.

Select an Auto stored station by pressing ***AUTO,*** then a ***KEYPAD*** (0 to 9) button or the ***SCROLL*** button to scroll up or down the station list.

Automatic Search for Transmitter

'PI seek' appears on the ***DISPLAY*** when reception is poor for the selected station. The radio automatically searches for the strongest transmission for that station. 'PI seek Back to cancel' is shown on the ***DISPLAY*** until the station is found.

Scanning

Scanning automatically searches for the next strong FM or AM station signals. When the radio finds a station, scanning pauses for approximately eight seconds, after which it continues.

1. Select FM or AM with the ***AM/FM*** button.
2. Press ***SCAN***. 'Scan' appears on the ***DISPLAY*** and each found station will play for approximately eight seconds.
3. Press ***SCAN*** or ***BACK*** to accept the station.

If no stations are found press either button again to cancel.

Radio Data System

Radio Data System (RDS) is a system that links together specific network transmitters. It is used, for example, to tune the correct frequency of a station irrespective of the transmitter or the active audio source (e.g. CD). The system can also be used for receiving traffic information (TP) and for finding broadcasts of a specific type. Radio text is also a component of RDS. A radio station can transmit information about the radio programme currently being broadcast.

Some radio stations do not use RDS or only use a limited range of its features.

Messages with a programme code (such as news from RDS stations) will interrupt other audio sources at the volume set for this. As soon as the news broadcast is finished, the audio system returns to the previous audio source and resumes the previous volume setting.

Alarm

Alarms are transmitted automatically. The function cannot be deactivated. 'Alarm!' is shown on the ***DISPLAY*** when an alarm message is broadcast. The function is used to warn motorists of serious accidents or disasters.

Activating / Deactivating News

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to FM Menu... *>(ENTER)> News >(ENTER)*. When News is active 'NEWS' will show on the ***DISPLAY***.

Press ***BACK*** during a news broadcast to cancel the broadcast. The News function remains active and waits for the next news programme.

Activating News From Current Station

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to FM Menu... *>(ENTER)> Advanced Radio Settings.... >(ENTER)> News station... >(ENTER)> News from current station >(ENTER)*.

Activating / Deactivating TP

Press ***TP*** repeatedly to activate / deactivate TP.

When active 'TP' is shown on the ***DISPLAY***. If the set station does not broadcast traffic information, 'TP)))' appears on the ***DISPLAY***.

Press ***BACK*** to exit the current traffic broadcast. TP remains active and waits for the next traffic broadcast.

TP From a Station or All Stations

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *FM Menu... >(ENTER)> Advanced radio settings... >(ENTER)> TP... >(ENTER)> TP station... >(ENTER)> TP from current station / TP from all stations >(ENTER)*.

TP Search

This function allows you to listen to traffic information when travelling between different areas and countries without selecting a station.

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *FM Menu... >(ENTER)> Advanced radio settings... >(ENTER)> TP... >(ENTER)> TP search >(ENTER)*.

Activating / Deactivating Radio Text

Some RDS stations broadcast information, such as about programme content and artists.

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *FM Menu... >(ENTER)> Radio text >(ENTER)*.

Programme Type

Use the Programme Type (PTY) function to select between the various programme types.

Activating / Deactivating PTY

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *FM Menu... >(ENTER)> PTY... >(ENTER)> Show PTY >(ENTER)*.

When active the set station's programme type will be shown on the ***DISPLAY***,e.g. Current affairs, Information, Drama, Rock music, etc.

Not all radio stations have a PTY designation.

Searching for a Specific PTY

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *FM Menu... >(ENTER)> PTY... >(ENTER)> PTY... >(ENTER)*.
3. Press ***ENTER*** for one or more of the listed programme types.

The PTY symbol on the ***DISPLAY*** lights up when the first selection is made and the radio is set to stand-by for PTY.

Press ***BACK*** to go back.

Navigate to *FM Menu... >(ENTER)> PTY... >(ENTER)> Search PTY >(ENTER)*.

If the radio finds a station with the selected programme type, this is played.

If a station with the selected programme type can not be found, the ***DISPLAY*** shows 'No Station Found' and the radio returns to the previous frequency.

PTY is then ON stand-by until the selected programme type is broadcast. When this happens, the radio automatically switches to the station broadcasting the selected programme type.

Clear All PTY

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *FM Menu... >(ENTER)> PTY... >(ENTER)> Clear all PTY... >(ENTER)*.

The PTY symbol disappears from the ***DISPLAY*** and the radio returns to normal mode.

Enhanced Other Networks

With Enhanced Other Networks (EON) activated, traffic announcements and news broadcasts interrupt radio programmes. The function has three levels:

Local - Only interrupts if the signal is strong.

Distant - Interrupts even if the signal is weak.

Off - Deactivated.

Activating / Deactivating EON

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *FM Menu... >(ENTER)> Advanced radio settings... >(ENTER)> EON... >(ENTER)>* Select *Local*, *Distant* or *Off >(ENTER)*.

When active 'EON' is shown on the ***DISPLAY***.

Automatic Frequency Updating

The Automatic Frequency Updating (AF) function is normally activate and ensures that the radio tunes to the strongest available transmitter.

Activating / Deactivating AF

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *FM Menu... >(ENTER)> Advanced radio settings... >(ENTER)> AF >(ENTER)*.

When active 'AF' is shown on the ***DISPLAY***.

Regional Radio Programmes

The regional function is normally deactivated. When the function is activated you can continue to listen to a regional broadcasts even if the signal is weak.

Activating / Deactivating Regional

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *FM Menu... >(ENTER)> Advanced radio settings... >(ENTER)> Regional >(ENTER)*.

When active 'Reg' is shown on the ***DISPLAY***.

Resetting Radio Functions

Resets all radio settings to the original factory settings.

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *FM Menu... >(ENTER)> Advanced radio settings... >(ENTER)> Reset all... >(ENTER)*.
3. Press ***ENTER*** again to confirm.

Radio Menu

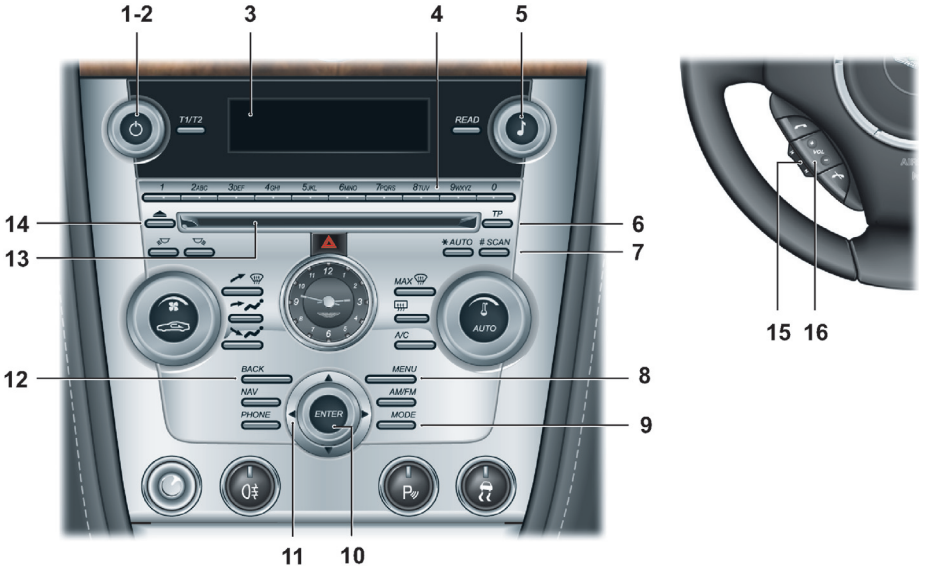
(1)FM Menu...
(1)News
(2)TP
(3)PTY...
  (1)Select PTY...
    (1)Search PTY
    (2)Clear all PTY...
  (2)Show PTY (ON / OFF)
(4)Radio text
(5)Advanced Radio Settings...
  (1)TP...
    (1)TP station...
    (2)TP search
  (2)News station...
  (3)AF
  (4)Regional
  (5)EON...
  (6)Reset all...

CD Changer Functions

(6)Audio Settings...
(1)Surround FM...
(2)Equalizer...
(3)Auto. volume control
(4)Reset all...

(1)AM Menu...

(1)Audio Settings...
(2)Surround AM...
(3)Equalizer...
(4)Auto. volume control
(5)Reset all...



1 ***ON/OFF -*** Audio ON / OFF.

2 ***VOLUME -*** Volume control.

3 ***DISPLAY -*** Presents options, menus and information.

4 ***KEYPAD -*** Buttons 1- 6 to select CD and menu short-cuts.

5 ***TUNING -*** Rotate to manually change CD tracks or navigate up / down in the menu.

6 ***TP -*** Press to enable traffic broadcasts. Press again to disable.

7 ***SCAN -*** 10 seconds of each track is played. Press once again to select a track.

8 ***MENU -*** Opens the main menu.

9 ***MODE -*** Select CD.

10 ***ENTER -*** Select in the menu, activate a selection.

11 ***JOYSTICK -***

Left / ***Right -*** Press (left or right) to move to the next or previous track. Press and hold (left or right) to search within a track or the whole CD.

Up / ***Down -*** Navigate up / down in the menus.

12 ***BACK -*** Press to navigate back one in the menu, press and hold to navigate back to the default screen. Cancel a selection.

13 Opening for insert / eject CD.

14 ***EJECT -*** Eject CD.

Steering Wheel Controls

15 ***SCROLL -*** Navigate up / down through the music tracks.

16 ***VOLUME -*** Volume control.

Use only 12 cm (4 3/4 in). CDs.

Do not use CDs with adhesive disc labels. The heat from the CD player can cause the label to come loose from the disc. The CD player could be damaged.

Do not use CDs that are warped or appear warped (critical measurement for CD warp is 0.7 mm (0.03 in) - anything more than this may cause problems). The CD player will not be able hold the CD correctly (because of the warp), this may cause a jam in the CD player.

If the quality of the CD does not comply with the requirements of standard EN60908 or if it has been recorded using poor equipment, sound quality may be poor or playback interrupted.

Loading CDs

The CD changer can hold up to six discs.

1. Press the ***MODE*** button repeatedly to select CD.
2. Select an empty position using the ***KEYPAD*** (buttons 1 to 6) or use the ***JOYSTICK*** up / down. The ***DISPLAY*** shows which positions are empty.
3. Insert a CD into the changer.

Ensure that 'Insert disc' is displayed before inserting a new disc.

Selecting a CD

Select the CD to play using ***KEYPAD*** buttons 1-6 or the ***JOYSTICK*** up / down. The number of the disc and track are shown on the ***DISPLAY***.

Changing Tracks

Press the ***JOYSTICK*** left / right, the ***SCROLL*** button, or rotate the ***TUNING*** dial to play the next or previous track. The track number is shown on the ***DISPLAY***.

Fast Forward / Reverse

Press and hold the ***JOYSTICK*** left / right to search forwards or backwards within a track or the whole disc. Searching continues for as long as the button is depressed.

Random Play

Plays tracks from a CD or CDs in random order.

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *CD Menu... >(ENTER)> Random... >(ENTER)>* Select *Off, Single disc* or *All discs >(ENTER)>* for the player to randomly choose from none, one or all CD's.

'RND' or 'RND ALL' is shown on the ***DISPLAY*** while the function is active. Press the ***JOYSTICK*** left / right or ***SCROLL*** button to select the next or previous random track.

Press ***BACK*** to deactivate random play.

Scan

Scan plays the first ten seconds of each track.

1. Press ***SCAN***.
2. Press ***SCAN*** or ***BACK*** to play a track.

Pause Mode

When the volume is at zero, play will pause. Reactivate play by turning up the volume.

Activating / Deactivating Disc Text

Some CDs have title information. The information is displayed as text on the ***DISPLAY***.

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *CD Menu... >(ENTER)> Disc text >(ENTER)*.

If information is stored on the disc, this is shown on the ***DISPLAY***.

Ejecting one CD

Press ***EJECT***.

For traffic safety reasons, the CD remains out for 12 seconds. The player will then draw back in the disc and switch to pause mode. Press CD to reactivate the player.

Ejecting all CDs

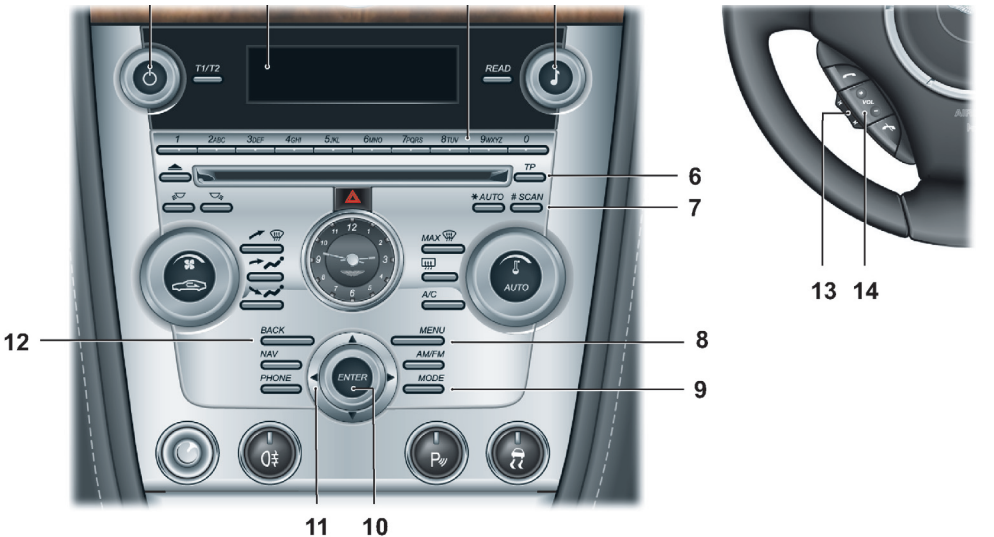
Press and hold ***EJECT*** (for longer than two seconds). The entire magazine is emptied, CD by CD. 'Eject all' is shown on the ***DISPLAY***.

This function can only be activated when the car is stationary and is interrupted if the car starts to move. For traffic safety reasons, the ejected CD remains out for 12 seconds. It must then be removed, or the function is cancelled.

CD Changer Menu

(1)CD Menu...
(1)Random...
(2)News
(3)TP
(4)Disc text
(5)Audio Settings...
(1)Surround CD...
(2)Equalizer...
(3)Auto. volume control
(4)Reset all

iPod / USB Functions



1 ***ON/OFF -*** Press for audio ON / OFF.

2 ***VOLUME -*** Volume control.

3 ***DISPLAY -*** Presents options, menus and information.

4 ***KEYPAD -*** Buttons 0 – 9 track selection and menu short-cuts.

5 ***TUNING -*** Rotate to manually to change tracks or navigate in the menus.

6 ***TP -*** Press to enable traffic broadcasts. Press again to disable.

7 ***SCAN -*** 10 seconds of each track is played. Press once again to select a track.

8 ***MENU -*** Opens the main menu.

9 ***MODE -*** Select USB, iPod.

10 ***ENTER -*** Open the file system, select in the menu, activate a selection.

11 ***JOYSTICK -***

Up / ***Down -*** Navigate up / down in the menus.

Left / ***Right -*** Press to move to the next track or previous. Press and hold to search within a track or the whole music folder. The search continues as long as a button is depressed.

12 ***BACK -*** Press to move back one action. Press and hold to move back to the default screen.

Steering Wheel Controls

13 ***SCROLL -*** Navigate up / down through the music tracks.

14 ***VOLUME -*** Volume control.

iPod / USB Connection

The iPod port is compatible with generation three iPods onwards.

The USB port is only compatible with USB storage devices, e.g. Memory Sticks.

On initial connection and on every engine start the system will synchronise with the connected device. This will take a short while to complete.

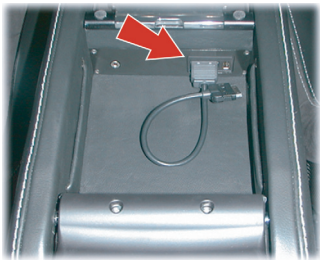
The iPod controls will not operate while connected to the vehicle audio system. All functionality will be from the vehicle Audio system.

Locate the iPod cable or the USB socket in the armrest cubby box.

1. Connect the iPod player cable to the iPod cable.

   or

2. Connect the USB device to the USB port.
3. If not already ON, switch ON the audio system.



4. Repeatedly press the ***MODE*** button until either 'iPod' or 'USB' shows on the Infotainment screen.
5. The iPod / USB device can now be operated by the Infotainment system.

The iPod controls will not operate while connected to the vehicle audio system. All functionality will be from the vehicle Infotainment system.

Playing Tracks

Once the mode has been set to either iPod or USB play automatically start.

Selecting Tracks

1. Press ***ENTER*** to display the music folder list.
2. Using the ***JOYSTICK*** up / down or the ***TUNING*** dial navigate through the folder list or music tracks. Press ***ENTER*** to open a folder or play a track.

Pause Mode

Press ***MUTE*** to pause play. Press again to resume play.

When the volume is at zero, play will pause. Reactivate play by turning up the volume.

Fast Forward / Rewind

Press and hold down the ***JOYSTICK*** left / right to search within a track or the whole music folder. The search continues as long as the button is depressed.

Changing Tracks

Press the ***JOYSTICK*** left / right, or the ***SCROLL*** button, or rotate the ***TUNING*** dial to play the next or previous track.

Scan

Scan plays the first ten seconds of each track.

1. Press ***SCAN***.
2. While scan is in progress press ***SCAN*** or ***BACK*** to play the required track.

Random

Plays tracks from the music folder(s) in random order.

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *iPod* or *USB Menu*... *>(ENTER)> Random*... *>(ENTER)>* Select *Off, Folder* or *All >(ENTER)* for the player to randomly choose from none, one or all music folders.

'RND' or 'RND ALL' is shown in the ***DISPLAY*** while the function is active.

Press the ***JOYSTICK*** left / right or the ***SCROLL*** button to select the next or previous random track.

RDS Radio stations

News Broadcasts (NEWS) and Traffic Information (TP) are also available when in USB / iPod mode. Refer to iPod and USB menus.

iPod / USB Menu

(1)iPod Menu... / USB Menu...

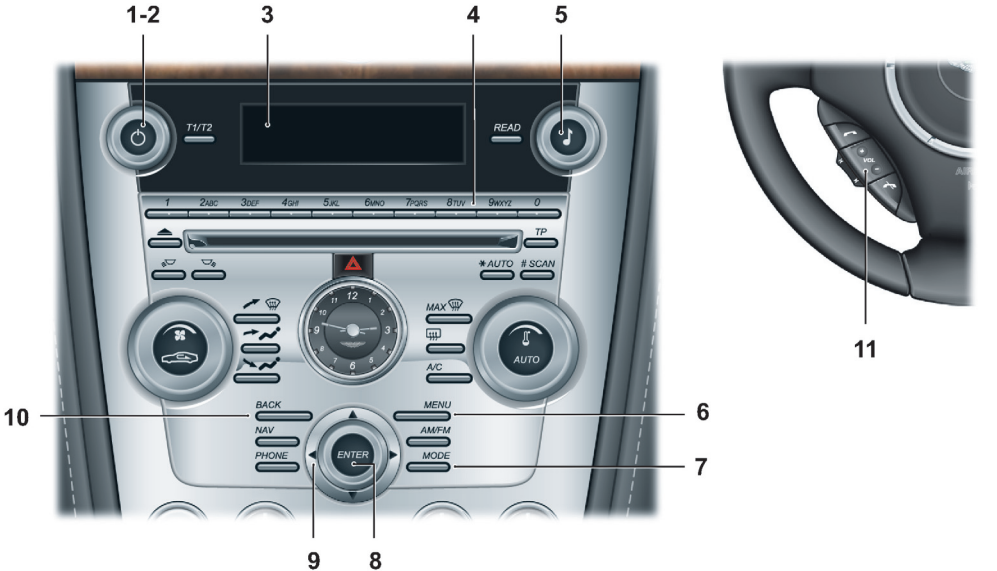
(1)Random...
(2)News
(3)TP
(4)Track Information
(5)Audio Settings...
  (1)Surround iPod...
  (2)Equalizer...
  (3)Auto. volume control...
  (4)Reset all

Auxiliary Functions

1 ***ON/OFF -*** Press for audio ON / OFF.
2 ***VOLUME -*** Volume control.
3 ***DISPLAY -*** Presents options, menus and information.
4 ***KEYPAD -*** Menu short-cuts.
5 ***TUNING -*** Rotate to navigate in the menus.
6 ***MENU -*** Opens the main menu.
7 ***MODE -*** Select AUX.
8 ***ENTER -*** Select in the menu, activate a selection.
9 ***JOYSTICK UP/DOWN -*** Navigate up / down in the menus.
10 ***BACK -*** Press to move back one action. Press and hold to move back to the default screen.

Steering Wheel Controls

11 ***VOLUME -*** Volume control.



The auxiliary input socket is provided to connect audio devices which can not be connected using the iPod or USB connections.

When an audio device is connected to the Infotainment system using the auxiliary socket all control of the device will remain with the device.

Audio Device Connection

Only volume control will be available from the vehicle audio system. All other functionality will be from the Audio device.

1. Locate the Auxiliary socket in the armrest cubby box.
2. Connect the audio device to the auxiliary socket using a suitable cable.
3. If not already ON, switch ON the audio system.
4. Repeatedly press the ***MODE*** button until 'AUX' shows on the ***DISPLAY***.
5. The media device will now play through Infotainment system.



Audio Device Volume

The vehicle audio system volume can be set at a higher or lower starting volume for the audio device.

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *AUX menu... >(ENTER)> AUX input volume... >(ENTER).* Rotate the ***TUNING*** dial to set the volume level.
3. Press and hold ***BACK*** to return to the main display.

Auxiliary Menu

(1)AUX Menu...

(1)AUX input volume...
(2)News
(3)Audio Settings...
  (1)Surround AUX...
  (2)Equalizer...
  (3)Auto. volume control...
  (4)Reset all

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

Hands-Free Phone

Contents

Introduction 9.2
Hands-Free Functions 9.2
Hands-Free Phone Active 9.4
Menus 9.4
Audio Settings 9.5
Connecting a Phone 9.6
Initial Pairing 9.7
Pairing Additional Phones 9.8
Removing a Paired Phone 9.10
Selecting a Phone 9.10
Calls 9.11
Phone Book 9.12
Voice Mailbox 9.13
Last Ten Numbers 9.14
Telephone Menu 9.14

Introduction

A mobile device equipped with Bluetooth capability can be connected wirelessly to the vehicle's Hands-Free phone system. The vehicle's Hands-Free phone system then provides remote control of a range of the mobile phone's functions. The mobile phone can always be operated by its own keys regardless of whether or not it is connected.

Automatic Transmission Only

The Hands-Free phone system uses the internal antenna of the mobile phone. Placing the mobile phone in the trinket tray may degrade the Hands-Free system performance.

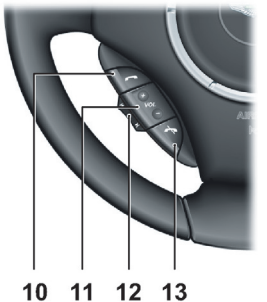
The Hands-Free system is active when the vehicle key is in position 'I' or 'II'. If, during a call, the vehicle key is moved to position '0' or removed the call will transfer to the mobile phone after approximately six seconds.

The Hands-Free phone system will not recognise a mobile phone, even if it is 'paired' (Refer to page 9.6), if the mobile phone does not have Bluetooth enabled. For more information refer to the user's guide for your mobile phone.

Hands-Free Functions

1. ***VOLUME -*** Volume control.
2. ***DISPLAY -*** Presents options, menus and information.
3. ***TUNING -*** Navigate through phone book and menus.
4. ***MENU -*** Opens the main menu.
5. ***ENTER -*** Press to answer or make a call. Select in the menu, activate a selection.
6. ***JOYSTICK UP/DOWN -*** Navigate up / down in the menus or forwards / back when entering text and digits.
7. ***PHONE -*** Press to activate phone mode. Press and hold to deactivate phone mode.
8. ***BACK -*** End a call. Navigate back in the menu. Cancel a selection. Erase the previous character when entering text and numbers.
9. ***KEYPAD -*** Search through the phone book. Speed dial.





Steering Wheel Controls

10 ***CALL -*** Press to answer a call. Press to return to phone mode from audio when phone mode is active.

11 ***VOLUME -*** Volume control during a call.

12 ***SCROLL -*** Navigate up / down in the menus.

13 ***CANCEL -*** Press to end a call. Press to enter audio mode when phone mode is active.

Hands-Free Phone Active

When Hands-Free mode is active the symbol will show in the ***DISPLAY.*** During a call this symbol will change to .

When a mobile phone is connected to the Hands-Free system the symbol will show in the ***DISPLAY***.

If, after 30 seconds, the Hands-Free Phone has not been used, the Infotainment system will default to audio functions. Return to Hands-Free Phone functions by pressing ***PHONE*** or ***CALL***.

Menus

The phone menu is only available when the Hands-Free Phone system is active. Press ***PHONE*** to activate. Press ***MENU*** to access the main menu.

Search Path

Menu paths are indicated for each operation in the following format:

Phone menu... >ENTER> Phone settings... >ENTER> Sounds and volume...

The menu selection is followed by a '>' symbol which indicates the next step.

Using the menu:

In this chapter when asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.

- Press the ***JOYSTICK*** up / down***, SCROLL*** button, or rotate the ***TUNING*** dial to navigate
- Press ***BACK*** to cancel, decline an option, or go back one step in the menu structure
- Press and hold ***BACK*** to cancel, decline an option, and go back to the main screen

- Press ***ENTER*** to confirm, select or navigate from one sub-menu to the next sub-menu
- Use the ***KEYPAD*** numbers as menu short-cuts. Press the number corresponding to the menu number.

Several menu options will require a cross in a box [X] to activate an option. Once the menu item is highlighted press ***ENTER*** to either place a cross in the box or delete the cross. Then press and hold ***BACK*** to accept and return to the main screen

Call Menu

Press ***MENU, ENTER*** or ***CALL*** during an ongoing call to access the following functions

Mute microphone - The Hands-Free system microphone is muted.

Transfer call to mobile / ***Transfer call to vehicle -*** The call can be transferred to / from the mobile phone or the vehicle phone.

Some mobile phones will terminate the connection when the privacy function is used. This is normal.The vehicle system asks if you want to reconnect.

Phone book - Access the phone book during a call.

Audio Settings

Call Volume

During a call the call volume can be regulated using the ***VOLUME*** dial / button.

Audio System Volume

The audio source can be automatically muted for incoming calls:

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *Phone menu... >ENTER> Phone settings... >ENTER> Sounds and volume... >ENTER> Mute radio >ENTER* to activate or deactivate.

If mute radio is deactivated switch to one of the audio sources to control the audio system volume during an ongoing call.

Ring Volume

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *Phone menu... >ENTER> Phone settings... >ENTER> Sounds and volume... >ENTER> Ring volume >ENTER*. Adjust using the ***TUNING*** dial.

Ring Signals

The vehicle system has integrated ring signals that can be selected:

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *Phone menu... >ENTER> Phone settings... >ENTER> Sounds and volume... >ENTER> Ring signal >ENTER>* Select *Ring signal 1, 2, 3* etc. *>ENTER*.

The connected mobile phone's ring signal is not deactivated when one of the vehicles integrated signals is used.

Connecting a Phone

A connection between the vehicle Hands-Free system and a phone is called a 'Paired Link'. When a paired link is set up the Hands-Free system remembers the phone's ID.

Once the Hands-Free system and the mobile phone are paired, the Hands-Free system automatically connects every time the ignition is switched ON if the Hands-Free system is active (Press ***PHONE*** to activate) on the vehicle and the mobile phone.

A mobile phone can be paired either using the vehicle Hands-Free system or by using the mobile phone.

This system supports paired links with up to five phones.

The process of initiating a Hands-Free connection with a phone varies per phone manufacturer. For more information refer to the user's guide for your mobile phone.

Disconnecting

The mobile phone will **automatically** disconnect when moved out of the Hand-Free system's range or Bluetooth is made unavailable on the mobile phone.

The mobile phone will **manually** disconnect when the Hands-Free system is deactivated. Press and hold ***PHONE*** until  disappears from the ***DISPLAY***.

The function is also deactivated when the ignition switched OFF.

If the mobile phone has been disconnected during an ongoing call, the call will transfer to the mobile phone.

Some mobile phones require that the transfer is confirmed from the phone's keypad.

Initial Pairing

Use this procedure when pairing the first mobile phone to the Hands-Free Phone system.

1. Press ***PHONE*** to active the Hands-Free system.

*If the  symbol is showing in the **DISPLAY** when the ignition is ON, initial pairing can be completed using the mobile phone (Refer to 'Pairing Using the Mobile Phone', page 9.9).*

2. The ***DISPLAY*** will only show 'No Paired Phones. Press ***ENTER*** to Add a Phone. Press ***EXIT*** to Cancel.'
3. Press ***ENTER***. The Hands-Free system will asked if Bluetooth is in discoverable mode (refer to the mobile phone manufactures instructions). If yes press ***ENTER***. After a short while a list of phones which are in range and in dicscoverable mode will be displayed.
4. Press the ***JOYSTICK*** up / down, ***SCROLL*** button or rotate the ***TUNING*** dial to navigate to the required mobile phone and press ***ENTER***.
5. The ***DISPLAY*** will then ask for a passkey to be entered into the mobile phone. The mobile phone will prompt for the passkey. Enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will timeout.

6. The ***DISPLAY*** will show 'Phone Connecting...' then, if successful, 'Synchronizing'.

Synchronizing automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the vehicle system. This function can be deactivated (Refer to 'Phone Book', page 9.12)

7. Once synchronizing has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

Pairing Additional Phones

Pairing Using the Hands-Free System

Disconnect any in use phones before pairing additional phones. If a phone is connected to the Hands-Free system pairing a new phone will not be possible until the Hands-Free system has no active Bluetooth connections

Check that the mobile phone has Bluetooth active and visible.

1. Check that the Hands-Free system is active (symbol will show in the ***DISPLAY***).
2. The Hands-Free system automatically searches for the last used phone. If the last used phone is not found a list of paired phones will be displayed along with *Add phone*. Select *Add phone* to pair a new phone to the system.

*If the last used phone is found press **MENU**. Navigate to Phone Menu... >ENTER> Bluetooth... >ENTER> Change phone... >ENTER> Add Phone...*

3. Press ***ENTER***. The Hands-Free system will asked if Bluetooth is in discoverable mode (refer to the mobile phone manufactures instructions). If yes press ***ENTER***. After a short while a list of phones which are in range and in dicscoverable mode will be displayed.
4. Press the ***JOYSTICK*** up / down, ***SCROLL*** button or rotate the ***TUNING*** dial to navigate to the required mobile phone and press ***ENTER***.

5. The ***DISPLAY*** will then ask for a passkey to be entered into the mobile phone. The mobile phone will prompt for the passkey. Enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will timeout.

6. The ***DISPLAY*** will show 'Phone Connecting...' then, if successful, 'Synchronizing'.

Synchronizing automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the Hands-Free system. This function can be deactivated (Refer to 'Phone Book', page 9.12)

7. Once synchronizing has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

Pairing Using the Mobile Phone

Disconnect any in use phones before pairing additional phones. If a phone is connected to the Hands-Free system pairing a new phone will not be possible until the Hands-Free system has no active Bluetooth connections

Check that the Hands-Free system is active (symbol will show in the ***DISPLAY***).

1. Follow the mobile phone manufactures instructions to search and connect to a new bluetooth device. The phone will search for discoverable Bluetooth devices in it's range.

   Select 'ASTON MARTIN' from the device list. The phone will prompt for a passkey.

If 'ASTON MARTIN' does not appear check that the Hands-Free system is active and search again.

2. Press ***MENU*** (on the vehicle) and move to *Phone menu... > Bluetooth... > Connect from Mobile Phone*. Press ***ENTER***.

   The ***DISPLAY*** will then show a passkey to be entered into the mobile phone. Enter the passkey into the mobile phone.

If the passkey is not entered after 20 seconds the screen will timeout.

   The ***DISPLAY*** will show 'Phone Connecting...' then, if successful, 'Synchronizing'.

Synchronizing automatically places all the mobile phone contacts onto the vehicle system. This function can be deactivated (Refer to 'Phone Book', page 9.12)

3. Once synchronizing has completed the mobile phone is ready for use.

Removing a Paired Phone

Using the Hands-Free system

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *Phone menu... >ENTER> Bluetooth... >ENTER> Remove Phone >ENTER*.
3. A list of paired phones will be displayed. Navigate to the required phone and press ***ENTER*** to delete or ***BACK*** to cancel.

Selecting a Phone

The phone to be selected must have Bluetooth active, visible and in close proximity to the Hands-Free Phone system.

Using the Mobile Phone

If not active, press ***PHONE*** to activated the Hands-Free system.

Using the Mobile phone, follow the manufactures instructions to search and connect to a Bluetooth device. The phone will search for discoverable Bluetooth devices in it's range. Select 'ASTON MARTIN' from the device list.

If 'ASTON MARTIN' does not appear check that the Hands-Free system is active and search again. If 'ASTON MARTIN' still does not appear the mobile phone may not be paired (Refer to 'Pairing Additional Phones', page 9.8)

Select Connect.

Calls

Using the Vehicle Hands-Free system

With the Hands-Free system already active, press ***MENU***. Navigate to *Phone Menu... >ENTER> Bluetooth... >ENTER> Change Phone >ENTER*. A list of paired phones will be displayed (along with *Add phone*). Navigate to the required phone and press ***ENTER*** to change or ***BACK*** to cancel.

Or

Press ***PHONE*** to activated the Hands-Free system. The system will then scan for the last used mobile phone. If found and it is the mobile required then press ***ENTER***. If the last phone is not found the ***DISPLAY*** will show a list of paired phones within range (with Bluetooth active). Navigate to a phone and press ***ENTER*** to select that phone.

Making a Call

Check that the Hands-Free system is active (symbol shows in the ***DISPLAY***.).

Press ***PHONE***, or ***CALL*** on the steering wheel controls.

- Press the ***JOYSTICK*** up / down, ***SCROLL*** button, or rotate the ***TUNING*** dial to select a contact from the phone book. Press ***CALL*** or ***ENTER*** to call.

Or

- Dial the number using the keypad and press ***CALL*** or ***ENTER*** to call. Press ***BACK*** to delete a number. Press and hold ***BACK*** to delete the whole number.

Ending Calls

To end a call press ***CANCEL*** or ***BACK***.

Reject a Call

Press ***CANCEL*** or ***BACK*** while the phone is ringing.

Calling Using Voice Recognition

If the mobile phone supports voice dialling:

1. Press, hold and release ***CALL*** or ***ENTER***.

   The amount of time require to hold in ***CALL*** or ***ENTER*** is dependant on the mobile phone.
2. Once 'Voice Tag Dialling' shows on the audio screen, allow one to two seconds before saying a name. The vehicle system will call the contact.

Receiving Calls

To answer an incoming call press ***CALL*** or ***ENTER***.

Automatic Answer

The automatic answer function means that calls are accepted automatically after four rings.

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *Phone menu... >ENTER> Phone settings... >ENTER> Call options... >ENTER> Automatic answer >ENTER* to activate or deactivate.

Phone Book

The mobile phone's phone book is synchronized automatically to the vehicle system at each connection.

If the mobile phone does not support copying of the phone book, 'List is empty' is shown when copying is finished.

If it is not required to synchronize to phone book:

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *Phone menu... >ENTER> Phone settings... >ENTER> Synchronizing phone book >ENTER* to activate or deactivate

If the phone book contains a caller's contact information, this is shown in the ***DISPLAY***.

Contact Search

Searching for contacts is only performed in the connected mobile phone's phone book.

- Press the ***JOYSTICK*** up / down, ***SCROLL*** button, or rotate the ***TUNING*** dial to bring up the contact list. Navigate to the contact. Press ***CALL*** or ***ENTER*** to call.

Or

- Use the ***KEYPAD*** to search the phone book. Press and hold a key (2 to 9) which relates to the first letter of the contact's name. This starts a search in the phone book based on the key's first letter. Navigate to the contact. Press ***CALL*** or ***ENTER*** to call.

Or

1. Press ***PHONE***.
2. Press ***MENU.***
3. Navigate to *Phone menu... >ENTER> Phone book... >ENTER> Search >ENTER*. Using the ***KEYPAD***, enter the first few letters of the contact name, press ***ENTER***.
4. Navigate to a contact. Press ***CALL*** or ***ENTER*** to call.

Voice Mailbox

To enter a voice mailbox number:

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *Phone menu... >ENTER> Phone settings... >ENTER> Call options... >ENTER> Voice mail number >ENTER>* Enter the number *>ENTER.*

Or

1. Press and hold ***KEYPAD*** number 1 to go to *Voice mail number*.
2. Enter the number and press ***ENTER***.

If the mobile phone has the voice mail number already stored then this will be placed into the system when synchronising during pairing.

Use the stored number by pressing 1 for several seconds.

To change the voice mail number go to *Voice mail number*. Press and hold ***BACK*** to delete the whole number or press and release to delete individual numbers. Once the number has been deleted then enter a new number.

Last Ten Numbers

Last Ten Dialled Numbers

1. Press ***ENTER***.
2. Use the ***JOYSTICK*** up / down, ***SCROLL*** button, or rotate the ***TUNING*** dial navigate to the required number. Press ***CALL*** or ***ENTER*** to call that number.

Last Ten Missed / Received Numbers

1. Press ***MENU***.
2. Navigate to *Phone menu... >ENTER> Last 10 missed calls* or *Last 10 received calls >ENTER.*

Last ten dialled will also be available.

3. Use the ***JOYSTICK*** up / down, ***SCROLL*** button, or rotate the ***TUNING*** dial to navigate to the required number. Press ***CALL*** or ***ENTER*** to call that number.

Telephone Menu

(1)Phone Menu...
(1)Last 10 missed calls
(2)Last 10 received calls
(3)Last 10 dialled calls
(4)Phone book...
  (1)Search
  (2)Copy fr. mobile phone
(5)Bluetooth...
  (1)Change Phone...
  (2)Remove Phone
  (3)Connect from mobile phone
(6)Phone settings...
  (1)Call options...
  (2)Automatic answer
  (3)Voice mail number
  (4)Sounds and volume...
    (1)Ring volume
    (2)Ring signal...
    (3)Mute Radio
  (5)Synchronizing phone book

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Satellite Navigation

Contents

Introduction 10.2
System Controls 10.3
Getting Started 10.4
Menu Structure 10.6
Map Image 10.7
Easy Mode Settings 10.8
Advanced Mode Settings 10.8
Demo (Simulation) 10.12
Map Updates 10.12
Easy Mode 10.13
Advanced Mode 10.17
Next Destination 10.22
Current Position 10.23
Last 20 Destinations 10.23
Return Trip 10.23
Store a Destination 10.23
Start Guidance 10.24
Itinerary 10.25
Avoid Specific Areas 10.26
Quick Menus 10.27
Map Scroll 10.30
Map Icons 10.31
Traffic Information 10.32
Avoid Traffic Problems 10.34
Traffic Surveillance 10.35
Frequently Asked Questions 10.35

Introduction

The Navigation system is an integrated part of the Infotainment centre system along with the audio system.

This Navigation system has been developed to help guide you to the destination of your choice. The system includes features that enable you to set itineraries, search for certain types of points of interest along your route, store special destinations, etc.

Two modes of operation are available:

Easy Mode - Provides basic straightforward functionality to enable the user to select a destination.

Advanced mode - Provides all system functionality.

The Navigation system has all maps and features, for the market area, installed in the vehicle's electronic memory.

A DVD player is provided to install map and feature up-dates as and when available (Refer to 'Installing Up-dates', page 10.12).

The locations used in this chapter do not necessarily reflect known places and are for the purpose of describing operating procedures only.

Global Positioning System

The vehicle's speed sensor and a gyro calculate the current position and the direction of travel of the vehicle using signals from the Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite system.

Traffic Message Channel Receiver

Standardised code system for traffic information. The Traffic Message Channel (TMC) receiver seeks the relevant frequency. Transmission occurs via FM frequencies. Transmission is not available everywhere. The system is currently being expanded.

Screen Care

The ***SCREEN*** must only be cleaned with a soft, lint free, lightly dampened cloth, or a cloth with a mild window cleaning agent.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Never use the navigation system or any other feature in the vehicle in a way that distracts you from the task of driving safely.

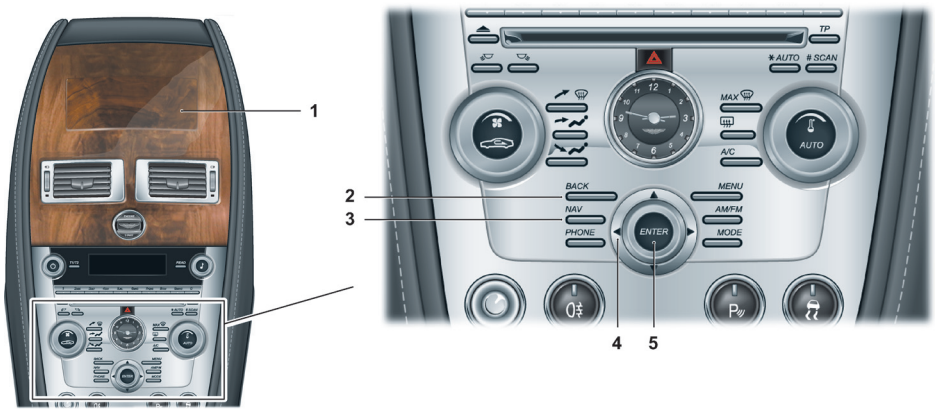
⚠ Warning ⚠
Distraction can lead to a serious accident.

System Controls

⚠ Warning ⚠
Set and make changes in the navigation system only with the vehicle parked.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Be aware of the current traffic situation.

1. ***SCREEN -*** Displays maps and provides detailed information on route type, distance, etc.
2. ***BACK -*** Press to return to the previous menu or to undo a choice.
3. ***NAV -*** Press to enable / disable Satellite Navigation controls.
4. ***JOYSTICK -*** Move up / down / right / left to navigate through different menu options, traffic messages, etc.
5. ***ENTER -*** Press to confirm options or to activate different menus.

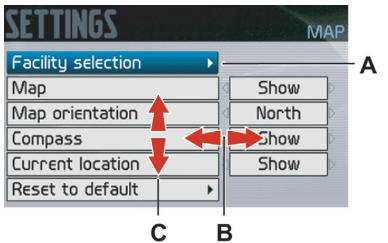


Menus

The Navigation menu is only available when the Navigation system is active. Press ***NAV*** to activate.

In this chapter when asked to 'Press' a button, this means 'Press and release'. When this is not the case it will be clear in the text.

- Press the ***JOYSTICK*** up / down / left / right to navigate
- Press ***BACK*** to cancel, decline an option, or go back one step in the menu structure
- Press and hold ***BACK*** to cancel, decline an option, and go back to the main screen
- Press ***ENTER*** to confirm, select or navigate from one submenu to the next submenu



Where an arrow is shown (A) press the ***JOYSTICK*** right to show a further menu.

To move from the left hand menu to the right hand menu press the ***JOYSTICK*** left or right (B).

To move up or down in the menus press the ***JOYSTICK*** up or down (C).

Search path

Menu paths are indicated for each operation in the following format:

(***Set destination*** > *Address* > *All Cities)*

Menu selections in the text are indicated by *<All Cities>*.

Turning the Navigation System ON

The vehicle key must at position 'I' or 'II' in the Ignition Control.

1. Press the ***NAV*** button (the button will illuminate).4
2. Press ***ENTER***. The navigation screen will open. On start up the ***SCREEN*** will show the option of running the Navigation system in Easy or Advanced mode. Select *<Easy>* or *<Advanced>* using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press ***ENTER***. The user mode can be changed at any time in the system setup menu.

The system may need a few seconds to detect your position and movement.

While the ***NAV*** button is illuminated the ***BACK***, ***ENTER*** and ***JOYSTICK*** functions only operate the Navigation system.

To use the audio or phone functions either:

- Press the ***NAV*** button again (illumination extinguished). The Navigation system will remain active. Press ***NAV*** again to return to Navigation controls

or

- Press the ***AM/FM***, ***MODE*** or ***PHONE*** buttons. The Navigation system will remain active. Press ***NAV*** again to return to Satellite Navigation controls

*Pressing the **AM/FM** or **MODE** buttons will move the current audio source.*

Turning the Navigation System OFF

*If in map mode press the **BACK** to view the main menu.*

1. From the main menu move to <*Shutdown*> and press ***ENTER***. The navigation screen will close after a few seconds.
2. Press the ***NAV*** button (illumination extinguished) to return functions back to audio.

The Navigation system can be accessed even if the ignition is switched OFF. Always switch the ignition OFF or remove the vehicle key when the system is not in use so the battery does not become discharged.

*If the Navigation system is still active when the vehicle key is remove the system will shut down. When the vehicle key is inserted again and placed at position 'I' or 'II' the Navigation system will start up automatically. Press the **NAV** button to activate Navigation controls.*

Guidance Voice

(Refer to 'Easy Mode Settings', page 10.8)

(Refer to 'Advanced Mode Settings', page 10.8)

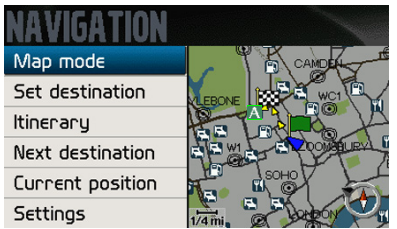
With Audio ON - If guidance is active, when guidance is provided the audio system will mute until the guidance message has finished.

Phone in Use - If guidance is active, guidance messages will be muted if the Hands-Free phone system is in use.

If a guidance message is broadcast during a phone call an audible 'Beep' will sound.

Menu Structure

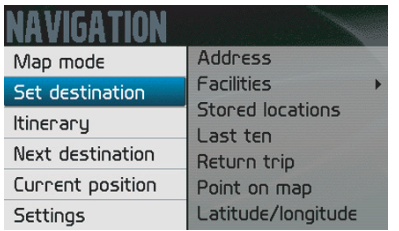
Left Hand Menu



Provides access to system functions (main menu).

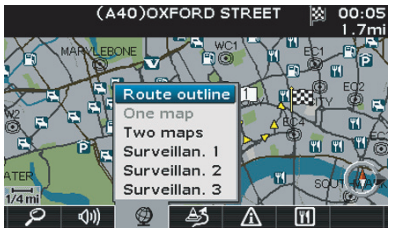
While in the default screen (map view) press ***BACK***. Using the ***JOYSTICK*** select a menu option and then move right or press ***ENTER*** to access the functions.

Right Hand Menu



Each menu heading in the left-hand section has a sub menu containing further options. Select an option using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press ***ENTER***. Press ***BACK*** to return to the main menu.

Quick Menus



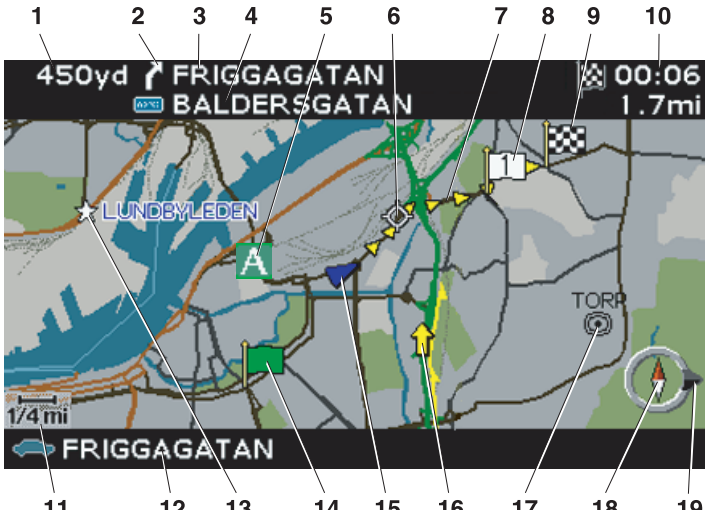
Press ***ENTER*** while in map view to access the Quick menus. Select a Quick menu using the ***JOYSTICK***. Select an option and press ***ENTER***.

Quick menus make it easier to access certain system options.

Some options are only accessible through the Quick menus.

(Refer to 'Quick Menus', page 10.27).

Map Image



1 Distance to the next guidance point.
2 Next guidance.
3 Name of next road.
4 Road sign information.
5 Facility symbol for Aston Martin Dealer.
6 Next guidance point.
7 Route.
8 Intermediate destination.
9 Destination.
10 Remaining travel time and distance to destination.
11 Map scale.
12 Road currently travelling.
13 Stored Destination.
14 Starting point.
15 Position of vehicle.
16 Symbol for traffic information.
17 Facility symbol for centre.
18 Compass.
19 Direction of destination.

Road types

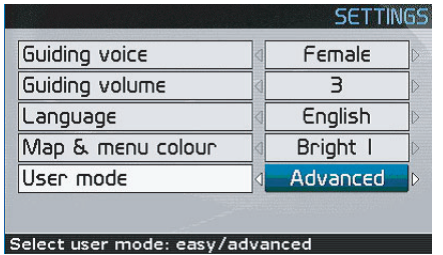
Motorway – green
Main road – red
Smaller main road – brown
Normal road – dark grey
Local road – dark green

Compass

The red tip of the compass needle points in a northerly direction on the map and the white tip points south. The blue destination arrow in the outer ring of the compass points in the direction of the destination.
Under <*Map options*> on the Settings menu you can choose to show or hide the compass and destination arrow.

Easy Mode Settings

System Settings



(***Settings*** > ***Enter***)

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings made using ***ENTER***.

Guiding voice - A male or a female guiding voice can be selected.

Guiding volume - Guiding voice volume.

Language - Indicate the language to be used in the system.

Map & menu colour - Choose between Bright 1 / 2 or Dark 1 / 2.

User mode - Select <*Easy*> or <*Advanced*>. All destinations will be deleted if changing operating modes.

Advanced Mode Settings

Traffic Information

(***Settings*** > *Traffic Information)*

Move among the functions using the ***JOYSTICK***.

Auto notification - Select <*Yes*> and press ***ENTER*** to obtain the option to choose an alternative route bypassing any traffic problems. Select <*No*> to switch OFF Auto notification.

Traffic-info. selection - Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right to obtain the submenu. Select which traffic information symbols (traffic messages) the system should show on the map and take into account when calculating the route.
<Show all> - Press ***ENTER*** to obtain all available traffic information.

<Hide all> - Press ***ENTER*** to receive no traffic information.

<Show selected> - Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right to be able to choose among the symbols.

Search station - Search for and select transmitting stations for traffic information. Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right to select *<Search stations>* and press ***ENTER***. Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to select a station and press ***ENTER***.

Press ***BACK*** to return to the previous screen.

Current station - Shows the current station for traffic information.

Reset to default - Restore factory settings. Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right. Select *<OK>* or *<Cancel>* and press ***ENTER***.

Traffic information is not available in all areas.

Route Options

(***Settings*** > *Route options*)

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings by pressing ***ENTER***.

Route - Select *<Fast>*, *<Short>* or *<Easy>* (Easy - Avoiding complex intersections and difficult manoeuvres, less narrow roads and junctions) route when calculating.

Avoid motorways - Indicate if motorways are to be avoided when calculating the route.

Avoid toll roads - Indicate if toll roads are to be avoided when calculating the route.

Avoid ferries - Indicate if ferries are to be avoided when calculating the route.

Avoid car train - Indicate if car trains are to be avoided when calculating the route.

Avoid traffic problems - Indicate if consideration should given to traffic problems when calculating the route. If *<Yes>* is selected, when a traffic message is received that affects the planned route, select from the following:

<Yes> Calculates an alternate route to avoid the traffic problem.

<*No*> Continue with the original route.

<*Map*> Scroll through the traffic messages.

If a new route is calculated select either <*New*> (The system selects the new route), <Old> (The system selects the original route) or <Map> (Shows the alternate and original routes on the map). Select an option using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press ***ENTER***.

The new route is shown in orange while the old route is shown in yellow. Information is also given on the overall length of both routes as well as the estimated travel time to the destination.

(Refer to 'Traffic Information', page 10.32).

Avoid time-restr. roads - Indicate if the system should pay consideration to time-restricted roads when calculating the route.

The correct time zone must be set for the function to work (Refer to 'System Settings', page 10.11).

Avoid specified areas - Select the areas the system is to avoid when calculating the route. Using the ***JOYSTICK*** press right. Select <*Selected*> and press right again to specify areas. (Refer to 'Avoid Specific Areas', page 10.26).

Reset to default - Restore factory settings. Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right. Select <*OK*> and press ***ENTER***.

The system can only use larger roads when calculating a route extending over a long distance. If <No> is selected for toll roads and motorways, they are avoided to the greatest possible extent and are only used if there is no other reasonable alternative.

Map Options

(***Settings*** > *Map options)*

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings by pressing ***ENTER***.

Facility selection - Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right to obtain the submenu.
<*Show all*> - See all facility symbols on the map image.
<*Hide all*> - No symbols are to be displayed.

<Show selected> - Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right to specify which symbols are to be shown on the map. These are activated with a cross. Step using the ***JOYSTICK*** to choose among the symbols.

Activate or deactivate using the ***JOYSTICK*** right / left. Confirm settings by pressing ***ENTER.***

Map - If the map is hidden, the system guides with an arrow.

Map orientation - Indicate whether north or the heading (direction of travel) should be up when looking at the map.

Compass - Indicate if the compass is to be shown on the ***SCREEN***.

Current Location - Indicate if the name of the street on which the vehicle is currently driving should be shown at the bottom of the ***SCREEN***.

Reset to default - Restore factory settings. Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right. Select *<OK>* or *<Cancel>* and press ***ENTER***.

Guiding Options

(***Settings*** > *Guiding options)*

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings by pressing ***ENTER***.

Time/dist. to go - Select *<RTA>* (Remaining time to arrival) or *<ETA>* (Estimated time of arrival). Distance to go will also show. Select *<Hide>* if this information is not to be displayed.

Reset to default - Restore factory settings. Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right. Select *<OK>* or *<Cancel>* and press ***ENTER***.

System Settings

(***Settings*** > *System settings)*

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move between the functions and select the desired setting. Confirm settings made using ***ENTER***.

Guiding voice - A male or a female guiding voice can be selected.

Guiding volume - Guiding voice volume.

Language - Indicate the language to be used in the system.

Colours - Choose between Bright 1 / 2 or Dark 1 / 2.

Screen saver - Indicate whether the screen saver is to be used (comes on after 30 seconds).

Help - Indicate if help texts are to be displayed at the bottom of the ***SCREEN***.

Distance unit - Indicate which unit of distance is to be used for navigation.

User mode - Select *<Easy>* or *<Advanced>*. All destinations will be deleted if changing operating modes.

Date & time info - Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right. Set date and time format.

GPS Information - Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right to view coordinates and address of the vehicle's position, as well as the number of satellites the system is in contact with.

About - System information.

Reset to default - Restore factory settings. Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right. Select *<OK>* or *<Cancel>* and press ***ENTER***.

Demo (Simulation)

(***Settings*** *> Start demo)*

The demo illustrates how the system works when the vehicle is stationary by simulating a trip to a specified destination. All settings can be made during the demonstration. *<Stop demo>* interrupts the simulation.

A destination must be entered for the demo to work.

Map Updates

Factors such as the constant expansion and rebuilding of the road network, new traffic regulations constantly being introduced etc. means that the digital map database is not always up-to-date. Digital maps are continuously updated and the coverage is increased gradually.

Map up-dates are available on DVD. For information on the latest versions of Map discs, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Installing Up-dates

1. Insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and move to position 'I'.

2. Start up the Navigation system.
3. Remove the trim protection panel to access the DVD player. Pull the trim panel out from the bottom.



4. Open the hatch on the DVD player and insert the up-date DVD. Close the hatch.

The entire up-date procedure can take up to 90 minutes. Once the up-date is complete, the default start screen is displayed.

5. Once the up-date has installed the DVD must remain in the disc player.

   If the DVD is removed the Navigation system will revert to either the original settings or, if the system has been up-dated previously, back to the previous level up-date.
6. Install the trim protection panel.
7. Remove the vehicle key from the Ignition Control.

Easy Mode

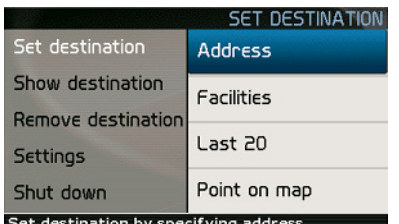
The Navigation system requires a destination to be entered so that a route to the destination can then be calculated. In Easy mode only one destination can be entered at a time.

*If the **SCREEN** is in map view press **BACK** to access the main menu.*

Once a valid destination has been entered <*Start Guide*> will be available.

Select Country

If searching for a destination outside the current country follow the procedure detailed below.



(***Set Destination*** > *Address)*

Using the ***JOYSTICK*** move to select *<All Countries>* and press ***ENTER***.

*Press the **JOYSTICK** right when an arrow is displayed on the right of the line. A list of the five last entered countries will be displayed. Select the required Country, if available, from the list and press **ENTER.***

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to spell out the desired country from the Character table. Press ***ENTER*** for each letter.

When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the remaining letters itself.

A list of countries matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the ***SCREEN***. A scroll bar on the right-hand side indicates that there are several alternatives in the list. The number indicates how many. Using the ***JOYSTICK*** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press ***ENTER***.

While scrolling through the list, return to the Character table by pressing ***BACK***. Press ***BACK*** to delete the entered letters one at a time.

The definition of city or area may vary from country to country or even within a country. Sometimes it refers to a municipality, while other times it refers to an individual section of a city.

Countries, Cities and Street names are deleted when the destinations in 'Last 20' are deleted.

Destination by an Address

Select City

Select *<All Cities>* and press ***ENTER***.

Follow selection methods as described for Select Country (Refer to page 10.13).

*If an arrow is displayed on the right of the line, press the **JOYSTICK** right. A list of the five last entries will be displayed.*

Select Street

Move to <*All Streets*> and press ***ENTER***.

It is also possible to search for street addresses throughout the country without specifying a particular city.

Street addresses are not stored in the system for some small towns. The town centre, however, can always be specified as the destination.

Follow selection methods as described for Select Country (Refer to page 10.13).

Once a Street has been selected it is then possible to move to <*Start Guide*>.

Select Street Number / Junction

If the street number of the selected address is known, it can also be entered to make guidance more exact. An intersecting street (junction) can also be entered instead of the street number.

Move to <*Number*> and press ***ENTER***. Existing street numbers are then displayed. Select a number using the ***JOYSTICK*** right / left and press ***ENTER***.

Once a valid number has been entered move to:

Set - Confirm entered number.

Cancel - Go back to the previous screen.

Move to <*Junction*> and press ***ENTER***.

The roads that intersect the selected street are shown in a list. Select from among the streets and press ***ENTER***.

Destination by a Post Code

Using the ***JOYSTICK*** move to <*All Cities*> and press ***ENTER***.

Move up and then right to <*Post code*> and press ***ENTER***.

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to select the desired letters and numbers from the character table and press ***ENTER.*** Move down and select a Post Code from the list. Press ***ENTER***.

While scrolling through the list, press ***BACK*** to return to the table of characters. Press ***BACK*** to delete entered characters.

In some countries the entire Post Code cannot be specified.

Move to <*Streets*> and press ***ENTER***. Choose letters using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press ***ENTER*** or move down and choose a street name directly from the list if options are available.

Then move to <*Number*> or <*Junction*> to specify a street number or a crossroads. Select <*Start Guide*> to obtain guidance to the destination.

Destination by a Facility

Facilities is a collective name for places such as Petrol Stations, Hotels, Restaurants, Aston Martin dealers, Hospitals, Car Parking, etc.

(***Set destination*** > *Facilities)*

If selecting <*All Cities*> first then the type and name of the facility will be available. It is possible to first select <*Types*> then <*Names*> without entering a City, or <*Names*> can be selected if the name of the facility is known.

Select <*All Cities*> and press ***ENTER***.

*Press the **JOYSTICK** right when an arrow is displayed on the right of the line. A list of the five last entered cities will be displayed.*

Follow selection methods as described for Select Country (Refer to page 10.13).

Move to <*Types*> *or* <*Names*> and press ***ENTER***.

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to select the desired letters and press ***ENTER*** or move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press ***ENTER***.

Some facilities (when selecting by <*Types*>) have further options. For example, select petrol station and press ***ENTER***.

The names of different petrol chains found in that area are then displayed. Select from among the alternatives and press ***ENTER***.

Return to the character table with ***BACK***. Press ***BACK*** to delete the entered letters one at a time.

Set a Destination

The Navigation system requires a destination to be entered so that a route to the destination can then be calculated. Various destination options are available.

*If the **SCREEN** is in map view press **BACK** to access the main menu.*

Once a valid destination has been entered <*Start Guide*> will be available (Refer to 'Start Guidance', page 10.24).

Various destinations can be entered and saved as an itinerary (Refer to 'Itinerary', page 10.25).

Last 20 Destinations

(***Set destination*** > *Last 20)*

Press ***ENTER*** to see the 20 most recently entered destinations. Move to the desired destination using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press right or ***ENTER*** to access the submenu.

Set as destination - Start guidance to the destination.

Delete Location - Deletes the entered destination.

Destination from a Point on the Map

(***Set Destination*** > *Point on map)*

Press ***ENTER***. Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move the cross on the map and specify a destination directly on the map.

The centre of the cross indicates the destination on the map.

The name and destination that correspond to the cross position are shown at the bottom of the map.

Press ***ENTER*** to access the scroll menu.

Scale - Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right to access the Scale quick menu. Move to <+> or <-> then press ***ENTER*** to zoom in or out or the map.

Set as destination - Press ***ENTER***. Guidance to the destination will start automatically.

Show Destination

(***Show Destination > Enter***)

Show Destination provides a map view of the intended destination, time to destination and distance to go. Press ***BACK*** twice to return to map view.

Select Country

If searching for a destination outside the current country follow the procedure detailed below.



(***Set Destination*** > *Address)*

Using the ***JOYSTICK*** move up / down to select <*All Countries*> and press ***ENTER***.

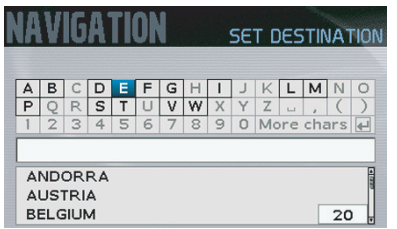
*Press the **JOYSTICK** right when an arrow is displayed on the right of the line. A list of the five last entered countries will be displayed. Select the required Country, if available, from the list and press **ENTER.***

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to spell out the desired country from the Character table. Press ***ENTER*** for each letter.

When there are no more alternatives, the system fills in the remaining letters itself.

A list of countries matching that letter combination is shown at the bottom of the ***SCREEN***.

Using the ***JOYSTICK*** move down and select directly from the list in the menu. Select and press ***ENTER***.



Return to the Character table by pressing ***BACK***. Press ***BACK*** to delete the entered letters one at a time.

The definition of city or area may vary from country to country or even within a country. Sometimes it refers to a municipality, while other times it refers to an individual section of a city.

Countries, Cities and Street names are deleted when the destinations in 'Last 20' are deleted.

Destination by an Address

Select <*All Cities*> and press ***ENTER***.

Follow selection methods described for Select Country (Refer to page 10.18).

Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right when an arrow is displayed on the right of the line. A list of the five last entered Cities will be displayed.

Once a City has been selected it is then possible to move to <*Start Guide*>.

Select Street

Move to <*All Streets*> and press ***ENTER***.

It is also possible to search for street addresses throughout the country without specifying a particular city.

Street addresses are not stored in the system for some small towns. The town centre, however, can always be specified as the destination.

Follow selection methods described for Select Country (Refer to page 10.18).

Select Street Number / Junction

If the street number of the selected address is known, it can also be entered to make guidance more exact. An intersecting street can also be entered instead of the street number.

It is possible to move directly down to <Start guide> and press ***ENTER***.

Move to <*Number*> and press ***ENTER***. Existing street numbers are then displayed. Select a number using the ***JOYSTICK*** right / left and press ***ENTER***.

Set - Confirm entered number.

Cancel - Go back to the previous screen.

Using the ***JOYSTICK*** move down to <*Junction*> and press ***ENTER***. The roads that intersect the selected street are shown in a list. Select from among the streets and press ***ENTER***.

Destination by a Post Code

Using the ***JOYSTICK*** move to <*All Cities*> and press ***ENTER***.

Move up and then right to <*Post code*> and press ***ENTER***.

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to select the desired letters and numbers from the character table and press ***ENTER*** or move down and choose a Post code directly from the list if options are available.

In some countries the entire Post Code cannot be specified.

Move to <*All Streets*> and press ***ENTER***. Choose letters using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press ***ENTER*** or move down and choose a street name directly from the list if options are available.

Then move to <*Number*> or to <*Junction*> to specify a street number or a crossroads. Select <*Start Guide*> to obtain guidance to the destination.

Destination by a Facility

Facilities is a collective name for places such as Petrol Stations, Hotels, Restaurants, Aston Martin dealers, Hospitals, Car Parking, etc.

(***Set destination*** > *Facilities)*

Press ***ENTER*** or press right to access a submenu with search options.

It is also possible to search for facilities around the vehicle, along the itinerary and along the motorway using the Quick menu (Refer to 'Facilities - Quick Menu', page 10.21).

Facility by name - Enter the name of a facility or select a facility type from the list in the menu. The list can vary and only shows the facilities of the selected City or area.

Around the car - The system searches in a circle with a radius of at least 2 km (1.5 mile). If less than 40 facilities are found, the search is extended to a radius of max. 100 km (62 mile).

Along the route - If a destination has been specified, the system can search for facilities within an area max. 1 km (0.5 mile) from the route and max. 100 km (62 mile) ahead.

Around point on map - The system searches the same way as <*Around the car*>, but around a specified point on the map.

Along a street - The system searches along a specified street. Select an option using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press ***ENTER***.

Search Facility by Name / Type

(***Set destination*** > *Facilities* > *Facility by name)*

Move to <*Types*> *or* <*Names*> and press ***ENTER***. Follow selection methods described for Select Country (Refer to page 10.18).

Facilities - Quick Menu

In map view press ***ENTER*** to access the Quick menu. Select the Facilities menu using the ***JOYSTICK***. Select from the menu and press ***ENTER***.

From the Facilities Quick menu it is possible to search for facilities which are easily accessible from the Motorway. Select from *<Around the car>*, *<Along the route>* or *<Along motorway>*.

When a calculated route extends over more than one Motorway, the system also searches adjoining Motorways.

If no route is calculated, the system searches along the Motorway the vehicle is travelling on. The list shows rest areas, petrol stations and restaurants along the Motorway along with the distance. Select a facility using the ***JOYSTICK***.

The facility is displayed on the map image. Press ***ENTER*** to view the whole map and to obtain map scroll mode. Press ***ENTER*** again to obtain the map scroll menu. Select *<Set as destination>* and press ***ENTER*** to select the facility as destination (Refer to 'Map Scroll', page 10.30).

In cases where there is more than one facility at the destination, an arrow is displayed to the right of the list. Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right to view a submenu of facilities. Select a facility and press ***ENTER*** to view it on the map.

Destination From a Point on the Map

(***Set Destination*** *> Point on map)*

Press ***ENTER***. Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move the cross on the map and specify a destination directly on the map, for example.

The centre of the cross indicates the current destination on the map. The name and destination that correspond to the cross position are shown at the bottom of the map.

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move the cross to the desired destination and press ***ENTER*** to access the scroll menu. Move to <*Set as destination*> and press ***ENTER***.

The destination is registered and added to the itinerary.

Start guidance - Starts guidance to the destination.

Add to itinerary - Add another destination.

Route options - Settings for route priorities.

Clear itinerary - Erases the itinerary.

Destination by Coordinates



(***Set Destination*** > *Latitude / longitude)*

Using the ***JOYSTICK*** move right / left to move from row to row and up / down to set coordinates.

OK - Shows the Destination of the specified coordinates on the map. Press ***ENTER*** to access the scroll menu. Move to <*Set as destination*> and press ***ENTER*** to select the Destination as a destination.
Press ***BACK*** to return to coordinate input.

Cancel - Return to the previous screen.

Next Destination

(***Next destination***)

Press ***ENTER*** or the ***JOYSTICK*** right to obtain information on the destination, such as name, remaining journey time and distance from present position to the destination. Press the left / right icons to view more destinations (if available).

Move to <*Map*> and press ***ENTER*** to view the whole map image and obtain scroll mode. Press ***ENTER*** again to obtain the map scroll menu (Refer to 'Map Scroll', page 10.30).

Current Position

(***Current position > Enter***)

The map image shows the vehicle's position and information on the destination, for example name and coordinates. <*GPS*> indicates the number of satellites the system is in contact with, on the left side of the ***SCREEN***.

Last 20 Destinations

(***Set destination*** *> Last 20)*

Press ***ENTER*** to see the 20 most recently entered destinations. Move to the desired destination using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press right or ***ENTER*** to access the submenu.

Add to itinerary - Adds the destination to the itinerary.

Information - Provides information on the destination.

Delete Location - Deletes the entered destination.

Return Trip

(***Set destination*** *> Return trip)*

Press ***ENTER*** to obtain guidance back to the starting point.

Select <*Start guidance*> and press ***ENTER***. The system then starts guiding back to the destination Start guidance was last selected.

Store a Destination

Up to 250 destinations can be saved and reused.

(***Itinerary***)

Using the ***JOYSTICK*** move up to the destination in question and press ***ENTER*** or the ***JOYSTICK*** right. Select <*Store*> from the submenu and press ***ENTER***.

The Map scroll function can also be used to save a destination (Refer to 'Map Scroll', page 10.30).

All stored destinations are marked with symbols on the map. Move to the symbols. Select and press ***ENTER***. The name of a stored destination is indicated automatically.

Press ***BACK*** to erase the original name and replace it with a new one. Select <*Store*> to save the destination.

Adjust

Select <*Adjust*> and press ***ENTER*** to move the position of the stored destination on the map.

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move the cross (on the map) to the new position of the stored destination and press ***ENTER***. Then select <*Set as Destination*> and press ***ENTER*** to save. Select <*Scale*> to change the scale.

Stored Destinations

(***Set destination*** > *Stored Locations)*

Press ***ENTER***. A list of stored destinations is displayed.
A stored destination is a previously saved destination.

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move among the stored destinations. Press right or ***ENTER*** to access the submenu.

Add to itinerary - Add the stored destination in the itinerary.

Information - Provides information on the stored destination.

Edit - Change the name, etc. of the stored destination.

Sorting - Sort stored destinations by icon or name.

Delete Destination - Delete a stored destination.

Select an option and press ***ENTER***.

Start Guidance

The <*Start guide*> option is only available when a valid destination has been entered.

When <*Start guide*> is selected, the system begins calculating the route and distance to the destination (during this time, a yellow / orange symbol is shown at the top of the ***SCREEN***).

If a detour is made from the planned route during the trip, the system automatically calculates a new route (Refer to 'Route Options', page 10.9) and (Refer to 'Avoid Specific Areas', page 10.26).

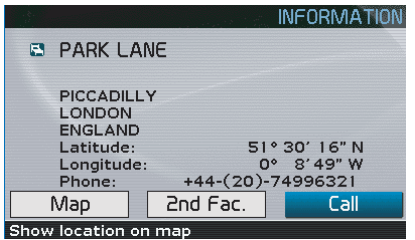
If neither a street number or an intersecting street is specified the system guides to the middle of the street chosen.

Start guide - The system guides to the destination.

Itinerary - Adds the destination to the itinerary.

Information - Provides information on the destination.

Information



The address, coordinates and in some cases the telephone number of a facility is shown under <*Information*>.

Map - Press ***ENTER*** to see the facility destination on the map.

2nd Fac - Shows related facilities in the area around the first facility.

Call - If the information screen contains a valid phone number press <*Call*> to call that number. The call will be place through the vehicle Hands-Free system.

Itinerary

An itinerary, containing several destinations, can be entered to avoid entering destination after destination during your trip. One destination with up to six intermediate destinations can be specified.

(***Itinerary***)

Start guidance - Starts guidance to the destination.

Add to itinerary - Add another destination.

Route options - Settings for route priorities.

Clear itinerary - Erase the entire itinerary.

Edit an Itinerary

Select a destination using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press ***ENTER*** or the ***JOYSTICK*** right to access options.

Information - Provides information on the destination.

Delete - Clears the destination from the itinerary.

Move - Changes the placement of the destination in the itinerary.

Adjust - Changes the destination of the destination on the map.

Store - Saves the destination under *<Stored Destinations>*.

Select an option and press ***ENTER***.

Avoid Specific Areas

(***Settings*** > *Route options*)

Specify up to five specific areas the system is to avoid in calculating the route.

Move to *<Avoid specified areas>* using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press right. Select *<Selected>* and press right again to specify areas.

None - Press ***ENTER*** to deactivate areas already activated.

Selected - Press the ***JOYSTICK*** right to view specified areas. Press ***JOYSTICK*** right to activate / deactivate areas already saved.

Avoid Area Options

Scroll to an empty specified area and press ***ENTER***. Choose option on the submenu using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press ***ENTER***.

Map - Press ***ENTER*** and use the ***JOYSTICK*** to indicate the area to be avoided directly on the map.

Address - Enter the address of the area to be avoided. The address constitutes the centre of the area.

Edit - Change the name of the saved area.

Delete - Erase a saved area. Confirm with *<OK>*.

Specify an Area on the Map

Select <*Map*>. Using the ***JOYSTICK***, move the centre point of the hairline cross to the centre of the area to be avoided. The name of the destination the centre point rests on is displayed at the bottom of the map.

The rectangle indicates the size of the area. Press ***ENTER*** to obtain the submenu.

Select option in the submenu and press ***ENTER***.

Scale **-** Specify the size of the area to be avoided.

Set area to avoid **-** Saves specified area.

Adjust size **-** Change the size of the area using the ***JOYSTICK***. Press ***BACK*** to undo the change, or press ***ENTER*** and select <*Set area to avoid*> to save.

Adjust area **-** Move the area using the ***JOYSTICK***. Press ***BACK*** to undo the move, or press ***ENTER*** and select <*Set area to avoid*> to save.

Specify an Area Address

Select <*Address*>. Enter the address of the area to be avoided. The address then constitutes the centre of the area.

Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move between the rows and press ***ENTER*** to enter the address. Once a valid area has been selected, move to <*Select*>, press ***ENTER***.

The specified area is shown on the map. Press ***ENTER*** to obtain the submenu.

Select <*Set area to avoid*> to save the area. Select <*Adjust size*> to change the size of the area or select <*Adjust area*> to move the area.

Cancel **-** Returns to saved areas.

Quick Menus

When in map mode press ***ENTER*** to access the Quick menus. Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to scroll through the menus.

Map Scale



Used to zoom in or out. The entire route from start to finish or the remaining route from the current position to the destination can be displayed (Refer to 'Map Scale', page 10.30).

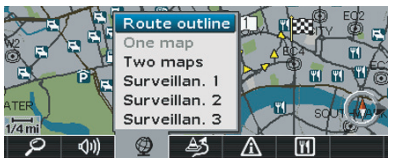
Guidance



Press ***ENTER*** to repeat a voice guidance.

Map / Route Outline

(Advanced mode only)



Map View

Choose between displaying one or two maps. Move to the Map / Route Quick menu using the ***JOYSTICK***. Select <*One map*> or <*Two map*> view.

Different degrees of magnification can be selected for each map image of the same area.

Route Outline

The destination and remaining distance are shown at the top of the ***SCREEN***. The next guidance point is highlighted. This is followed by a list of remaining guidance points.

In addition to the name of the road, the distance between guidance points and an arrow indicating the type of manoeuvre are shown.

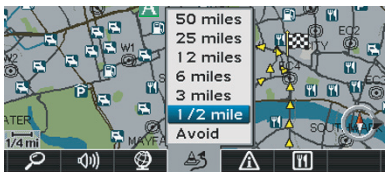
Guidance points are deleted as they are passed. If a deviation is made from the given route, the system calculates a new one.

Surveillance 1, 2 or 3

View areas set previously for surveillance (Refer to 'Traffic Surveillance', page 10.35).

Detour

(Advanced Mode Only)



When the detour function is used, the system calculates an alternate route to avoid part of the calculated route. This is used to avoid construction, for example.

Move to the Detour Quick menu using the ***JOYSTICK***.

Set the number of kilometres the route is to be avoided using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press ***ENTER***. The system then calculates a new route and avoids the original route for the specified number of kilometres starting from the current position.

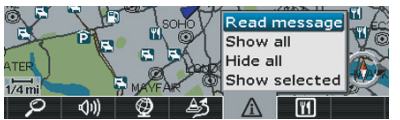
A destination must be specified for the function to work.

Avoid Specific Street

Select *<Avoid>* and press ***ENTER***. A list of streets that are part of the route are displayed. Move to the street to be avoided using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press ***ENTER***.

Traffic Information

(Advanced Mode Only)

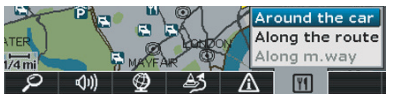


Select which traffic information symbols are to be displayed on the map image. It is also possible to read the traffic messages indicated on the map image. (Refer to 'Traffic Information', page 10.32).

Traffic information is not available in all areas.

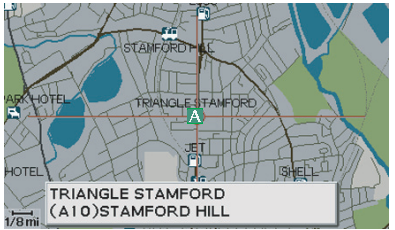
Facilities

(Advanced Mode Only)



Search for facilities around your vehicle and along the route, e.g. select *<Along m. way>* to search for facilities which are easily accessible from the motorway (Refer to 'Destination by a Facility', page 10.20).

Map Scroll



While in map view move the ***JOYSTICK*** in any direction activate Map scroll. The ***JOYSTICK*** can then be used to move the cross freely over a large area with a detailed scale.

The destination that corresponds to the cross position is shown at the bottom of the map.

Scroll Menu

Press ***ENTER*** to access the scroll menu.

Scale - Function to temporarily change the map scale. Press ***BACK*** to return to the original scale and to return to the vehicle's position on the map.

Set as destination - Select a destination on the map as a destination or intermediate destination (Refer to 'Destination From a Point on the Map', page 10.21).

Facilities around - The system searches for facilities around a specific point on the map. The system searches in a circle with a radius of 2 km (1.5 mile). If less than 40 facilities are found, the search is extended to a radius of max. 100 km (62 mile).

Read traffic msg. - Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to select from among the traffic messages displayed on the ***SCREEN***.

Set for surveill. - Specify an area on the map that can then be easily monitored.

Store Destination - Save a Destination on the map.

Select an option using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press ***ENTER***.

Map Scale

Press ***ENTER*** in Map view to access the Quick menus. Move to the Map scale Quick menu using the ***JOYSTICK***. Move to <+> or <-> then press ***ENTER*** to zoom in or out or the map.

If two map images are displayed on the ***SCREEN***, use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move to the map that is to be changed (Refer to 'Quick Menus', page 10.27).

Scale is indicated at the bottom of the ***SCREEN***.

Select the option (green flag + finish flag) at the top of the Map scale Quick menu and press ***ENTER***.

The thick line on the map shows the whole route from start to destination.

The option (vehicle + finish flag) second from top on the Map scale Quick menu shows the remaining route from the present position to the destination.

Press ***ENTER*** to change scale. Move the ***JOYSTICK*** to obtain map scroll.

Map Icons

- Aston Martin Dealer
- Automobile club
- Airport
- Bus station
- Conference / Exhibition centre
- Cinema
- Casino
- Compressed natural gas
- Athletics stadium
- Amusement park
- Bowling
- Car hire
- City centre
- Car park
- Ferry terminal
- Gasol/LPG
- Hospital
- Hotel
- Large company
- Marina
- Outdoor area
- Parking garage
- Park & ride
- Railway station
- Golf course
- Historical monument
- Ice skating rink
- Museum
- Night club / Music club
- Public sport airport
- Petrol station
- Restaurant
- Rest area

Shopping centre	Ski resort
Theatre / Opera	Tourist attraction
Town hall	Toll booth
Tourist information	University / college
Winery	
Other danger	Traffic queue
Road narrows	Traffic diversion
Oncoming traffic	Incident

Slippery road surface	Slow traffic
Road works	Slow traffic in both directions
Accident	Area message
Information	Other information
Parking information	

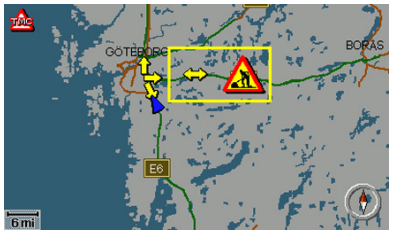
Traffic Information

Traffic information (TMC) is available as an option and is only supported in certain countries.

Delay Time

Some traffic messages transmitted also contain information on escalation. On all scales up to 5 km (3 mile) the yellow or red line along the route is also displayed in addition to the symbol. The length of this line corresponds to the extent of the traffic problem.

Read Messages



While in map view move the ***JOYSTICK*** in any direction activate Map scroll. Press ***ENTER*** to access the scroll menu.

Move to <*Read traffic msg.*> and press ***ENTER***. Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move among the different traffic messages.

Relevant messages are marked with a red or yellow frame. Press ***ENTER*** for detailed traffic information. Press ***BACK*** to be able to move among relevant messages again.

Press ***ENTER*** for detailed traffic information.

The number of traffic messages relevant to the map area is indicated on the ***SCREEN***. Detailed information on the traffic problem is also shown.

The extent of the problem and distance from the present position is shown at the top. Duration, roads affected and limitations regarding speed, vehicle width, vehicle height, etc. are shown in the extent to which they are available.
Toggle between the arrows and press ***ENTER*** to shift between available messages.
The amount of traffic information available depends on the scale of the map (larger area - more information) (Refer to 'Map Scale', page 10.30).

Traffic Symbols

Traffic information is accessible during the trip if it is sent within the area in question. If there are traffic messages within the area shown on the map, they are marked with symbols.

The symbols can have two colours. Yellow indicates important information while red indicates urgent information.

Change the scale to access traffic information within a larger or smaller area.
Traffic information is always available, even if no destination is specified.

Options

(***Settings*** > *Traffic information* > *Traffic-info. selection)*

Select which traffic information symbols (traffic messages) the system should show on the map and take into account when calculating the route. These are activated with a cross.
Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to select from among the symbols. Activate or deactivate using the ***JOYSTICK*** right / left. Confirm settings made using ***ENTER***.

Traffic information symbols can also be selected via the Quick menu (Refer to 'Menu Structure', page 10.6).

Auto Notification

(***Settings*** > *Traffic Info.* > *Auto. notification*)

Yes - To make it possible to select an alternate route around any traffic problems (Refer to 'Route Options', page 10.9).

No - Switch OFF auto notification.

Avoid Traffic Problems

*(**Settings** > Route options > Avoid traffic problems)*

No - If the system is not to avoid roads with traffic problems when calculating the route.

Yes - If the system is to avoid roads with traffic problems when calculating the route.

When a traffic message is received that affects the planned route, the system can calculate an alternate route.

Yes - The system calculates an alternate route to avoid the traffic problem.

No - The system continues with the original route.

Map - Sets to map scroll mode. Move among the different messages.

New or Old Route

If the system calculates an alternate route, the new route is shown in orange while the old route is shown in yellow. Information is also given on the overall length of both routes as well as the estimated travel time to the destination.

If there is no alternate route, the system will indicate such.

New - The system selects the new route.

Old - The system selects the original route.

Map - Shows the alternate and original routes on the map.

Select an option using the ***JOYSTICK*** and press ***ENTER***.

Traffic Surveillance

In order to quickly check the traffic situation in an area, one or more sections of road can be monitored. Select map scroll to set the map over the area to be monitored, such as a section of road where there is a risk of traffic queues.

While in map view move the ***JOYSTICK*** in any direction to activate Map scroll. Use the ***JOYSTICK*** to move the cross on the map. Set the cross over the area to be monitored and press ***ENTER*** to access the scroll menu. Move down to *<Set for surveill.>* and press ***ENTER*** or the ***JOYSTICK*** right to access the surveillance menu.

Store Surveillance

Three different areas can be stored. Select *<Surveillance No. 1, 2* or *3>* and press ***ENTER***.

Show Stored Surveillance Map

Press ***ENTER*** in map view to access the Quick menu. Move to the map menu using the ***JOYSTICK***. Select *<Surveillan. 1, 2* or *3>* to see one of the areas set for surveillance.

Frequently Asked Questions

(Q) The position of the vehicle on the map is wrong or jumps.

(A) The GPS system indicates the position of the vehicle with an accuracy of about 20 metres. There is a greater chance of error when driving on roads lying parallel to another road, winding roads, roads on several levels and after driving a long distance without making any distinctive turns. High mountains, buildings, tunnels, viaducts, over / underpasses etc. also have a negative affect on the reception of GPS signals, which means that accuracy in calculating the position of the vehicle may decrease.

(Q) The navigation system does not always calculate the fastest / shortest road.

(A) When calculating a route, distance, width of road, type of road, number of right or left turns, roundabouts etc. are all taken into account in order to produce the best theoretical route. A more efficient selection of route may be possible based on experience and knowledge of the area.

(Q) The navigation system uses toll roads, motorways and ferries even though I chose to avoid them.

(A) When calculating routes over longer distances, for technical reasons, the system can only use larger roads when calculating a route extending over a long distance. If *<No>* is selected for toll roads and motorways, they are avoided to the greatest possible extent and are only used if there is no other reasonable alternative.

(Q) The position of the vehicle on the map is incorrect after transportation.

(A) If the vehicle is transported, for example by ferry or train, or in such a way as to impede the reception of GPS signals, it can take up to five minutes before the position of the vehicle is correctly calculated.

(Q) The position of the vehicle on the map is incorrect after the vehicle battery has been disconnected.

(A) If power has been cut from the GPS antenna, it can take more than 15 minutes for the GPS signals to be received correctly and the position of the vehicle to be calculated.

(Q) The map image does not correspond with the real situation.

(A) Factors such as the constant expansion and rebuilding of the road network, new traffic regulations constantly being introduced etc. means that the digital map database is not always complete. The information stored in the maps is constantly being developed and updated. An Aston Martin Dealer can provide further information.

(Q) The scale of the map sometimes changes.

(A) Scale is affected by vehicle speed. At speeds over 140 km/h (87 m.p.h.) the largest possible degree of magnification is 250 m (820 ft). Once speed decreases to 120 km/h (74.5 m.p.h.), the system is once again able to display all degrees of magnification. If no detailed map information is available, the largest degree of magnification is 500 m (1640 ft) regardless of speed.

(Q) The expected menu option is missing.

(A) Look at the settings that have been made. Select <*Reset to default*> to restore the original settings.

(Q) The system shows the route I am already on when I request *Calculate new route* or *Detour*.

(A) The system cannot find a good alternative to the current route.

(Q) The vehicle symbol on screen jumps forwards or spins.

(A) The system may need a few seconds to sense the position and movement of the vehicle before driving off. Switch OFF both the system and the engine. Start again, but remain stationary for a while before starting to drive.

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

Maintenance

Contents

Introduction....11.2
Vehicle Jacking....11.3
Servicing Precautions....11.4
Dangerous Substances....11.5
Emergency Items....11.6
Owner Maintenance....11.7
Opening / Closing the Bonnet....11.8
Fluid Levels....11.10
Windscreen Blade Replacement....11.14
Brake Pad 'Bedding-in'....11.14
Wheels and Tyres....11.15
Winter Tyres....11.17
Tyre Sealant Kit....11.18
Transporting and Towing....11.22
Battery Warnings....11.23
Battery....11.23
Battery Charge....11.24
Battery Protection Mode....11.28
Electrical Start From Another Vehicle....11.30
Fuses....11.32
Bulbs....11.36
Door Window Reset....11.40
Bodywork and Fittings....11.40
Vehicle Cleaning....11.40
Vehicle Storage....11.44

Introduction

Each item in the Service Schedules must be performed on time as failure to do so may void the New Car Warranty or other warranties. It is the owner's responsibility to see that the vehicle is maintained properly and in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedules.

Due to the sophistication of the various systems and the specialised equipment required to maintain your vehicle, owner maintenance should be restricted to the routine procedures described in this Owner's Guide. If you think that your vehicle is not functioning properly, please return it to an Aston Martin Dealer to be checked professionally.

Restraint Systems

Aston Martin recommend that the inflatable (airbags) restraint systems and seat belt components installed to this vehicle are replaced at 10 (ten) year intervals from the date of manufacture on the certification label.

Electronic Fuel Injection

⚠ Warning ⚠
If the fuel system is allowed to run dry irreparable damage to the fuel pumps may occur.

The electronic fuel injection system requires special equipment and test facilities to set up and maintain so that the vehicle gives maximum performance coupled with economy, reliability and safe vehicle emissions. You are, therefore, strongly advised to entrust all service work to an Aston Martin Dealer.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Any modifications or additions to the fuel system not specifically designed by Aston Martin are prohibited. If carried out, they may cause damage to the fuel system which in some circumstances could result in fire. All Service Action Campaigns must be undertaken by an Aston Martin Dealer.

Parts and Lubricants

When undertaking a servicing task only parts, materials, lubricants, etc. that are specifically recommended by Aston Martin should be used. Failure to do so can result in damage to your vehicle and may invalidate your New Car Warranty or other warranties (Refer to 'Warranty', page C.1).

This vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by the use of improper engine oil. Low quality or obsolete oils do NOT provide the protection required by modern, high performance engines.

Failure to use engine oil that meets the required specification (Refer to 'Fluids', page 12.13) could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increased pollution. It could also lead to engine failure.

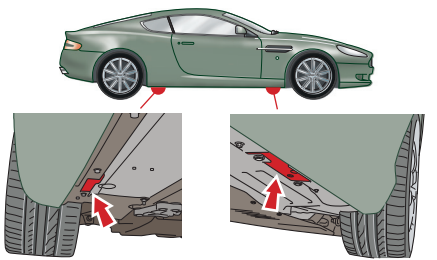
Emission Warranty

The emission control systems installed to vehicles for certain markets are covered by a separate warranty. A statement of the provisions is given in the Warranty section of this Owner's Guide. **You are advised to familiarise yourself with all warranty conditions at the earliest opportunity after taking delivery of your car**.

Vehicle Jacking

If this vehicle is to be raised using a vehicle jack ensure the following jacking points are use.

Do not raise the vehicle by placing a vehicle jack under the suspension arms.



⚠ Warning ⚠
Ensure that no persons are in the vehicle before jacking commences.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Ensure that the handbrake is set and that the vehicle is in Park (Automatic) or 1st Gear (Manual).

⚠ Warning ⚠
Ensure that the vehicle is parked on firm and level ground to ensure a secure base for the jack.

Servicing Precautions

To avoid personal injury, the following safety precautions must be observed when the bonnet is open and the engine is running or the ignition is switched ON.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Protect yourself against dangerous substances (Refer to 'Dangerous Substances', page 11.5).

⚠ Warning ⚠
Keep hands, hair, tools, items of clothing and jewellery clear of all drive belts, pulleys and operating mechanisms. The cooling fans may operate even though the engine is not running.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not breathe exhaust fumes. Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide. Carbon monoxide is a dangerous gas, which is colourless and odourless and can cause unconsciousness and may be fatal. Never start or leave the engine running in an enclosed, unventilated area.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Avoid skin contact with all exhaust system and engine components, engine fluids and escaping steam. They may be hot and will burn you.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not work beneath the vehicle with a vehicle lifting jack as the only support. Place suitable stands under the vehicle.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Keep children and pets clear of the vehicle. Do not allow anyone inside the vehicle unless specifically working to your instructions.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Whenever possible work in the engine compartment with the engine cool, the ignition switched OFF and the vehicle battery disconnected.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Petrol is highly flammable and, in confined spaces, is also explosive and toxic. In the event of spillage, switch OFF the engine, use no naked flame or light. Do not smoke. Do not inhale fumes.

Dangerous Substances

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Dangerous substances should be kept out of reach of children.

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Many liquids and other substances used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should under no circumstances be consumed and should, so far as possible, be kept from contact with the skin. These substances include battery electrolyte, antifreeze, oil, brake and clutch fluid, petrol, windscreen washer additives, lubricants, refrigerant and various adhesives.

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Particular care should be taken to avoid unnecessary contact with used engine oil. Always read carefully the instructions printed on labels or stamped on components and follow them carefully. Such instructions are included for reasons of your health and personal safety. Never disregard them.

Engine Oils

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
Prolonged and repeated contact with used engine oils can cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer. Avoid excessive contact, wash thoroughly after contact. Keep out of reach of children. When your oil is changed, be sure that it is done by an experienced person. In addition, observe all laws regarding the disposal of waste oil and toxic fluids.

Protect The Environment

⚠ *Warning* ⚠
It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses, or soil. Use authorised waste disposal facilities, including civic amenity sites and garages providing facilities for receipt of used oil. If in doubt, contact your local authority for advice.

Emergency Items

The following emergency items are located in the boot.

1 Warning Triangle.

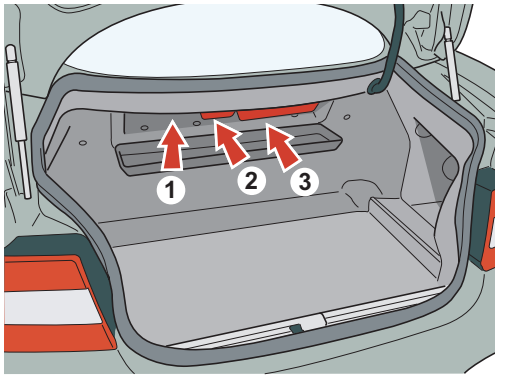
Always follow local regulations when placing a warning triangle.

2 First Aid Kit (Option).

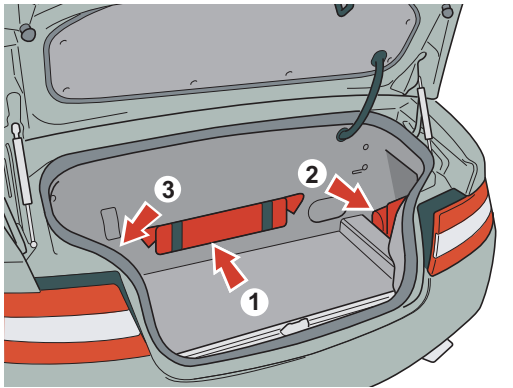
A first aid kit is installed as standard for Belgium, Germany and the Middle East markets.

3 Tyre Sealant Kit (Refer to 'Tyre Sealant Kit', page 11.18).

Coupe Boot



Volante Boot



Owner Maintenance

In the interests of safety and reliability, it is advisable to carry out the following checks at the intervals suggested (more frequently if your vehicle is heavily used or operating in adverse conditions), and always before starting on a long journey. Refer to the following pages for advice and check procedures.

Before Use Check:

- Operation of lamps, horn, indicators, wipers, washers and warning lamps
- Check there is sufficient fuel for the intended journey, particularly at night and before entering motorways
- Operation of the seat belts
- Operation of the brakes
- Check for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle

Weekly Checks

(daily if covering high mileage or touring)

- Tyres
- Coolant level
- Brake fluid level
- Power steering level
- Operate Air Conditioning
- Windscreen washer fluid level
- Check operation of windscreen washers

Engine Oil Level

Check the engine oil level every fourth fuel tank fill or weekly - which ever is the sooner.

It is important to check the engine oil level regularly. Running the engine with engine oil below the lower mark or above the upper mark can cause serious engine damage.

Tool Kit

A vehicle tool kit is located underneath the trim panel in the left hand side of the boot floor.



The tool kit consists of:

***Towing Eye* -** (Refer to 'Transporting and Towing', page 11.22).

Screwdriver - For the removal of the front registration plate when installing the front towing eye.

Road Wheel Lock Nut Socket (option) - For the removal of a road wheel(s) when Servicing / Maintenance is required.

Bulbs - (Refer to 'Bulbs', page 11.36).

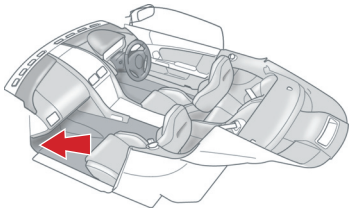
Battery Conditioner

(Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 11.25)

Opening / Closing the Bonnet

Opening

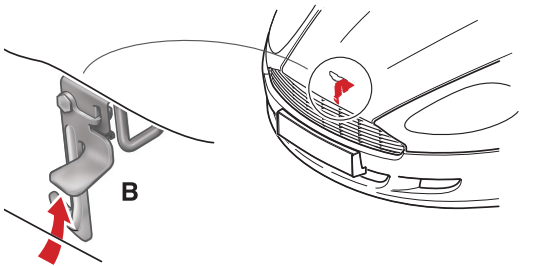
Take care not unintentionally to pull on or catch the Bonnet release lever.



Pull lever (A) to release the bonnet latch. The bonnet will rise but remain secured by the bonnet secondary catch.



Lift slightly on the bonnet front edge whilst pulling upward on the bonnet secondary catch (B) to release it. Lift the bonnet until fully open. The bonnet is held open by two gas struts.



If the windscreen wipers are switched ON, they will temporarily rest in the park position while the bonnet is unlatched.

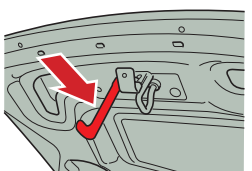
Closing

Before closing the bonnet, remove any tools, cleaning cloths, etc. from the engine compartment. Ensure that no one is obstructing the 'closing' area and that hands, clothing etc. are clear.

Lower the bonnet until it starts to fall under it's own weight. At that point let the bonnet fall to close.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Do not pull on the bonnet secondary catch to assist in closing the bonnet. This may displace the secondary catch. If the secondary catch is displaced it may not work correctly.



If the bonnet does not fully close the warning message 'Bonnet not fully closed' will appear in the message centre (right).

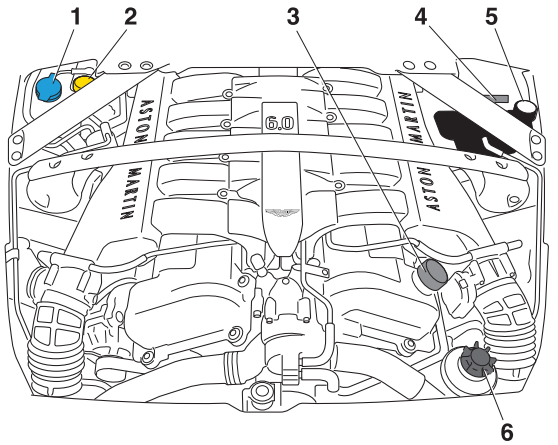
If the bonnet does not shut, open the bonnet again and repeat the closure procedure, this time assist using light hand pressure as the bonnet falls.

Do not press down hard on a bonnet that has not closed correctly. This may damage the bonnet.

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Fluid Levels



⚠ Warning ⚠
Engine components may be hot and could cause severe burns.

1. Washer Fluid Reservoir.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir[a].
3. Engine Oil Filler Cap.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick.
5. Engine Coolant Reservoir.
6. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir.

[a] Item two changes sides for left and right hand drive.

Windscreen Wash Fluid Level



Top up as required. In winter, to prevent the windscreen wash fluid freezing, increase the fluid concentration (refer to the manufacturers recommendations on the windscreen wash fluid container).

When the level of screen wash fluid is low an information message will show in the message centre (right) and the amber warning lamp will illuminate.

Local regulations may restrict the use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs), which are commonly used as antifreeze agents in windscreen washer fluid. A windscreen washer fluid with limited VOC content should be used only if it provides adequate freeze resistance for all regions and climates in which the vehicle will be operated.

Windscreen Washer Jets

Washer jet housings are located on the rear edge of the bonnet. Each housing contains two washer jets.

Windscreen washer jets are set during manufacture and should not need adjustment. However, if adjustment is required, adjust up / down so that the fluid strikes between a third and half way up the windscreen.

Engine Oil Level

⚠ Warning ⚠
Engine oil and / or components may be hot and could cause severe burns.

Running the engine with engine oil below the lower mark or above the upper mark can cause serious engine damage.

This vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by the use of improper engine oil. Low quality or obsolete oils do NOT provide the protection required by modern, high performance engines.

Failure to use engine oil that meets the required specification (Refer to 'Fluids', page 12.13) could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increased pollution. It could also lead to engine failure.

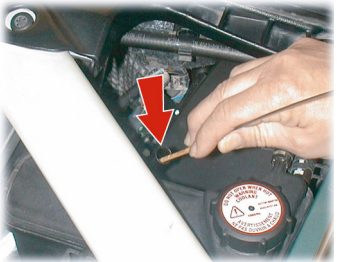
- The vehicle should be on level ground
- Check the oil level when the engine completely cold
- Check the engine oil level every fourth fuel tank fill or weekly - which ever is the sooner

Oil level check:

1. Withdraw and wipe the dipstick clean, using a lint free cloth.

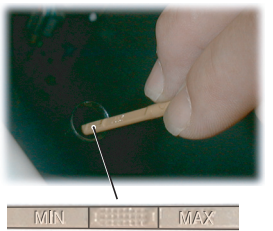


2. Fully insert the dipstick with the Min. / Max. marking on the blade upwards (facing towards the engine). Withdraw again.



Approximately one litre (1.75 pint) is required to bring the level from Min. to Max.

3. The oil level should read between the Min. & Max. marks.



4. If required remove the filler, top up to the Max. mark with the recommended engine oil.



5. Wait for approximately two minutes for the oil to settle, then check the level again. Add oil if required. **Do not overfill**.
6. Replace the filler cap securely, replace the dipstick & press it home.

Brake Fluid Level

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not drive the vehicle if the brake fluid level is below the Min. mark.

Ensure brake fluid does not contact the paint work during the topping-up operation. Serious paint work damage can result. If a spillage does occur, immediately flush any brake fluid from the paint work with clean, fresh water and then wipe with a clean damp cloth.

Wipe the reservoir cap clean before removing to prevent ingress of contaminants.



The brake fluid level should read between the Min. and Max. marks.

1. Remove the reservoir cap. Top up to the indicated Max. level.
2. Install the reservoir cap securely.

Engine Coolant Level Check

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not remove the filler cap until the coolant system has cooled. Scalding can be caused by escaping steam or coolant.

Use a cloth or glove to protect hands and protect face and arms adequately.

1. Remove the pressure cap to check the coolant level. The correct coolant level is to the top of the reservoir tank. Top up with the correct antifreeze mix (Refer to 'Fluids', page 12.13), if required.
2. Ensure the filler cap is secure after topping up.



Do not over tighten.

If required to remove the pressure cap before the engine is cold, **use gloves or a protective cloth** and slowly loosen the pressure cap. Allow residual pressure to slowly drop. Continue to turn the pressure cap until it is released.

Power Steering Fluid Level

Ensure power steering fluid does not contact the paint work during topping up. Serious paint work damage can result. If a spillage does occur, immediately flush any power steering fluid from the paint work with clean fresh water, then wipe with a clean damp cloth.



Always check the reservoir level when the engine is cold and with the front road wheels in the straight ahead position.

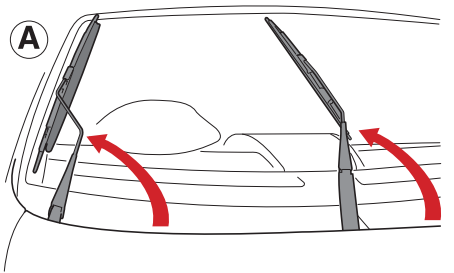
Wipe the reservoir cap clean before removing to prevent an ingress of contaminants.

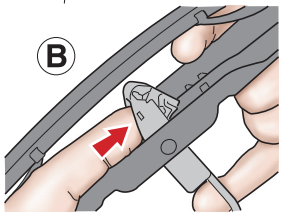
1. Remove the reservoir cap and wipe the dipstick clean. Replace and remove again. The fluid level should read between the Min. and Max. marks.
2. If required, top-up fluid level. **Do not overfill**.

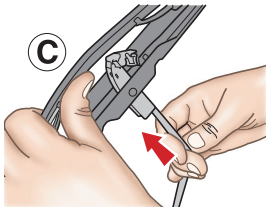
Windscreen Blade Replacement

To replace the windscreen wiper blades the wiper arms must be set at 90° to the vehicle (A).

1. Press and hold in buttons 2 and 6 (Infotainment keypad). Insert the vehicle key in the Ignition Control and move to position 'II' (ignition ON). This will manoeuvre the wiper blade arms to the 90° position. Return the vehicle key to position '0'.
2. Lift the wiper arm(s) up and remove the worn wiper blade(s). Install the new wiper blade(s) and lower the wiper arm(s).
3. After replacing the wiper blade either:
   - Move the vehicle key back to position 'II' to lower the wiper arms. Return the vehicle key to position '0' or remove.
   - Operate the wiper stalk - the wiper arms will complete the request and then park.







Brake Pad 'Bedding-in'

Failure to 'bed-in' new brake pads will result in reduced brake performance and possible brake judder or squeal.

After the installation of new brake pads, brake performance will be limited, as the brake discs and pads need to be 'Bedded-in'. For the first few hundred kms / miles of new brake pad use, avoid excessive braking (hard stops from high speed, alpine descents, etc.).

Wheels and Tyres

Tyres of the correct type, manufacturer and dimensions, with correct cold inflation pressures are an integral part of every vehicle's design. Regular maintenance of tyres contributes not only to safety, but to the designed function of the vehicle.

Roadholding, steering and braking are especially vulnerable to incorrectly pressurised, badly installed or worn tyres.

Tyres of the correct size and type, but of different make have widely varying characteristics.

Only install tyres approved by Aston Martin (Refer to 'Tyres', page 12.7).

Tyre Pressures

Ensure that correct tyre pressures are carefully maintained (Refer to 'Tyres', page 12.7). Road holding, steering, braking and tyre wear are especially vulnerable to incorrect tyre pressures.

Check tyre pressures regularly and before starting any journey. Re-inflate any tyre with a low pressure at the earliest opportunity.

Pressures increase slightly when the tyres are hot. For an accurate reading, pressures should be checked when the tyres are cold. After adjusting the tyre pressures, ensure that the valve caps are securely replaced to provide an additional air seal and to prevent the ingress of dirt.

Tyre Service

Because of the high performance potential of this vehicle, Aston Martin strongly recommend replacement of any damaged or worn tyre.

The recommended tyres for this vehicle are asymmetrical and must be installed to the wheel with the tyre mark 'Outside' on the outside of the wheel rim.

They are also of different sizes on the front and rear axles, therefore complete wheels cannot be swapped from one side of the vehicle to the other or between axles.

Damage

Tyres should be examined at regular intervals for wear and damage. Inspect the tyre treads and sidewalls for damage, i.e. bulges in the tread or the sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or the sidewalls. If damage is observed or suspected have the tyre inspected by a tyre professional.

Stones or other objects which have become lodged in the tyre treads should be carefully removed.

Flat Spots

It is a characteristic of high performance tyres that temporary 'flat spots' may develop if the vehicle is left standing in high or low ambient temperatures for any length of time.

These 'flat spots' will manifest themselves as minor vibrations when the car is first driven from cold. As the tyres warm up to operating temperature, normal tyre shape should be restored and the vibrations cease. If vibrations persist, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Age

Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used. It is recommended that tyres generally be replaced after six years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process.

Local regulations on tyre life may apply.

New Tyres

New tyres should not be installed to the front wheels in combination with worn rear tyres, as rear end stability will be affected. When new tyres are required consult your Aston Martin Dealer for advice if the rear tyres are also worn.

Each wheel and tyre unit must be balanced dynamically to ensure efficient steering, optimum tyre wear and maximum ride comfort. Because of the potentially high speeds, it is essential that wheel balancing is carried out when new tyres are installed.

'Running-In' New Tyres

When new tyres have been installed, speed should be limited, particularly during the first 80 km (50 mile) or so of driving. Fast cornering, hard braking, and harsh acceleration should also be avoided during this period.

Tread Wear Indicators



Tread wear indicators (A) are incorporated into the construction of all tyres. These indicators are integral moulded ribs spaced at regular intervals around the circumference of the tyre and extend across the full width of the tread, in all primary grooves.

When a tyre has worn causing one or more of the indicators to be flush with the outer face of the tread the tyre has reached its wear limit. It then becomes illegal in certain countries and must be replaced.

Winter Tyres

The tyres installed as original equipment are designed with a rubber compound, tread pattern and width specially suited for high speeds in normal road conditions, but they are less suitable during extremes of low temperatures, snow and ice. The use of winter tyres will considerably improve handling during these conditions.

Winter Tyres

Only use Aston Martin approved winter tyres.

Winter tyres must be used in vehicle sets, that is, installed on all four wheels. Four special wheel rims and winter tyres (Refer to 'Winter Tyres', page 12.7) are required for severe weather driving. Do not exceed the tyre speed rating when using winter tyres.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Maximum speed with winter tyres is 240 km/h (150 m.p.h.).

Snow (Chains) Spiders

These are available from your Aston Martin Dealer for temporary use when driving in heavy snow conditions. Snow spiders should only be installed to the rear (driven) wheels.

The maximum speed when using snow spiders is 48 km/h (30 m.p.h.). Remove the snow spiders immediately the roads are clear of snow.

Ensure the installation instructions supplied with the snow spiders are kept in a safe place.

Tyre Sealant Kit

⚠ Warning ⚠
Read the instructions and warnings carefully before using the Tyre Sealant System.

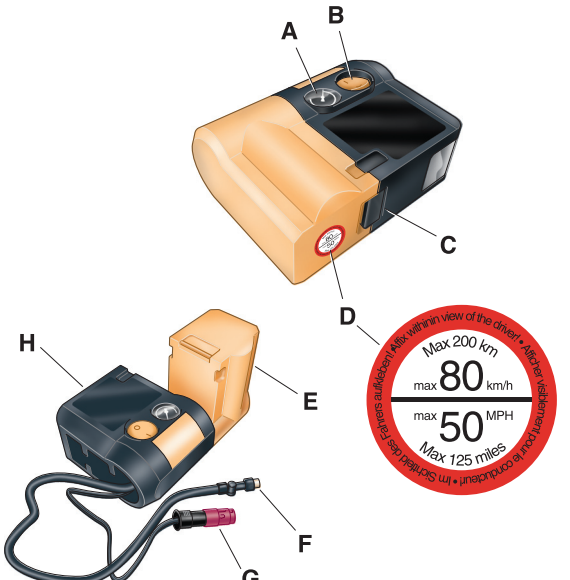
- Ensure the vehicle is parked far enough from traffic so that there is no danger from passing vehicles and so that you do not disrupt the traffic. Warn other vehicles using the warning triangle
- Read the user instructions and warnings on the system
- The system should only be used between – 40°C and 70°C (– 40°F and 158°F)
- The system will effectively seal a tyre that was punctured by an object with a diameter of up to 6mm (1/4″). It is possible that a tyre, especially with greater damage, will not be sealed. Do not remove objects that punctured the tyre if they are still lodged in the tyre
- A maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 m.p.h.) may not be exceeded at any time after sealing the tyre with the system
- The system provides only a **temporary emergency repair** for continuing the journey up to 200 km (125 mile) or to the nearest Aston Martin Dealer
- If the nearest Aston Martin Dealer is over a 200 km (125 mile) away
  Arrange for collection under the Aston Martin European Emergency Service scheme
- The sealant bottle needs to be exchanged before it expires. **Do not** use the system after the expiry date on the sealant bottle or casing has been reached. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer
- Do not attempt to inflate other objects without using a system adapter and do not inflate objects with a volume greater than 50 litre (1.8 ft^3) (air mattresses, rubber boats, etc.). Do not let the system pump air for more than 10 minutes without switching it OFF and allowing it to cool down

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not use the system to seal a tyre that was damaged while driving with insufficient air pressure (e.g. tyre cuts, cracks, bumps or similar damage). Do not use the system to seal tyres with side wall damage. Only punctures in the tread area of tyres may be sealed.

Sealing a Punctured Tyre



1. Remove speed label (D) from the system and place it on the steering wheel, below the metal ring (1), as a reminder to not exceed the Maximum speed.
2. Ensure that the orange ON / OFF switch (B) is in the '0' position.
3. Remove the lead (G) and the hose (F) from the compartment (H) on the side of the system.
4. Remove the valve cap from the punctured tyre and screw the hose (F) of the system onto the tyre valve.
5. Place the lead plug (G) into the accessory socket of the vehicle.



6. Release the safety latch (C) and turn the orange part of the system through 90° (E), so that the orange part is in the vertical position.

⚠ Warning ⚠
It is dangerous to inhale car fumes. Do not leave the engine running in closed or insufficiently ventilated areas.

7. Start the engine of the vehicle (Only if the vehicle is in an open and well ventilated area).

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping. Watch the side wall of the tyre. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage turn OFF the compressor. The journey should not be continued. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.

8. Turn the orange ON / OFF switch (B) to position 'I'.

While pumping the sealant through the tyre valve a temporary pressure of 4-6 bar (60-90 psi) may arise. After approximately 30 seconds this pressure will drop.

9. Inflate the tyre to a minimum pressure of 1.8 bar (26 psi) but do not exceed 3.5 bar (51 psi) (Pump for approximately 7 minutes). Switch the system OFF to check the true pressure in the tyre.

Danger of overheating.
Do not allow the compressor to run for more than 10 minutes without allowing it to cool down.

10. If a pressure of 1.8 bar (26 psi) is not achieved in 10 minutes, disconnect the system and cautiously drive the vehicle forward and backward approximately 10 m (30 ft) to distribute the sealant in the tyre. Then repeat step 9.

⚠ Warning ⚠
If a tyre pressure of 1.8 bar (26 psi) still cannot be reached then the tyre can not be sealed. Do not attempt to re-inflate the tyre. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

11. Remove the hose from the tyre valve and replace the valve cap. Remove lead from the accessory socket. Return the orange part of the system to its original position and fasten the latch. Stow the system safely in the vehicle.

⚠ Warning ⚠
A speed of 80 km/h (50 m.p.h.) may not be exceeded after using the system and the sealed tyre must be replaced as soon as possible (recommended maximum distance 200 km (125 mile).

12. Immediately continue with your journey for approximately 3 km (2 mile) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 m.p.h.) to allow the sealant to seal the puncture.

⚠ Warning ⚠
If the pressure in the tyre after driving for 3 km (2 mile) is below 1.3 bar (19 psi) the tyre has not been effectively sealed. The journey should not be continued. Contact your nearest Aston Martin Dealer.

13. Stop after driving for approximately 3 km (2 mile) and re-check the tyre pressure by following these steps:
    1 Connect the hose to the tyre valve.
    2 Plug the lead plug into the accessory socket.
    3 Read the pressure off the pressure gauge.

14. If the tyre pressure is more than 1.3 bar (19 psi) then switch the system on and inflate the tyre to the required tyre pressure (Refer to 'Tyres', page 12.7) (Pump for approximately 2 minutes.) Use the pressure release valve on the hose (F) if the tyre pressure is too high.
15. Remove the hose from the tyre valve, replace the valve cap, disconnect the lead and stow the system safely in the vehicle.

⚠ Warning ⚠
After a longer period of rest, the tyre pressure should be rechecked.

16. After using the system the hose and connected parts must be exchanged. The sealant bottle and replacement parts can be obtained and exchanged at your Aston Martin Dealer.

To Pump Air Only

1. Ensure that the orange ON / OFF switch (B) is in the '0' position.
2. Remove the lead and the hose from the compartment (H) on the side of the system.
3. Connect the hose to the valve
4. Do not release the safety latch (C) and do not turn the orange part of the system into the 90° position (E). The orange part should be in the horizontal position.
5. Place the lead plug (G) into the accessory socket of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning ⚠
It is dangerous to inhale car fumes. Do not leave engine running in closed or insufficiently ventilated areas.

6. Start the engine of the car (Only if the car is in an open and well ventilated area).
7. Turn the orange ON / OFF switch (B) to the 'I' position.
8. Inflate the item to the required pressure.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not inflate items with pressure requirements of more than 4 bar (58 psi).

Danger of overheating.
Do not allow the compressor to run for more than 10 minutes without allowing it to cool down.

9. Turn the orange ON / OFF switch (B) to the '0' position when the required pressure has been reached.

Transporting and Towing

The recommended method for moving a defective vehicle is to have it transported in a purpose built, covered, vehicle transporter.

When moving the vehicle by transporter ensure the vehicle is not lashed down, to the transporter, by the suspension control arms.

The front towing eye is only for emergency use when moving the vehicle for **short distances**, e.g. If it is causing an obstruction or if it requires winching onto a transporter.

If moving the vehicle in such a situation:

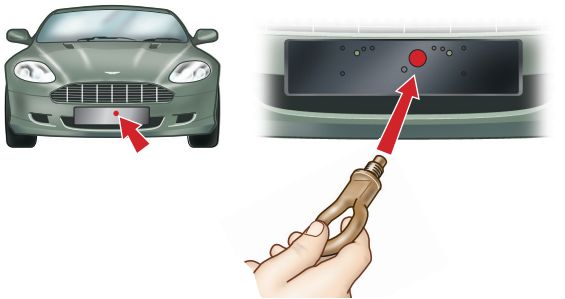
Power braking and power steering are not available with the engine turned OFF. Substantially higher brake pedal pressures and steering effort are required.

1. Remove the towing eye from its storage location in the boot.
2. Use the screwdriver, provided in the tool kit, to remove the front number plate, then install the towing eye to the exposed female threads.

The towing eye incorporates a left hand thread.

Protect vehicle paint work when installing the towing eye.

3. Select 'Neutral'. Move the vehicle key to position 'II' (ignition ON), this releases the steering lock.
4. When being towed use the handbrake or footbrake very gently as required to prevent excessive slack in the tow rope.



If a transmission fault is present, this vehicle must be transported.

Battery Warnings

The following warnings are located on the vehicle battery.



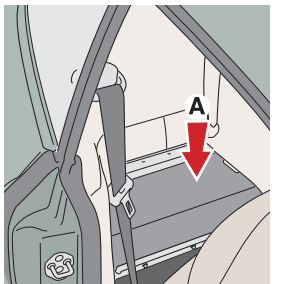


Battery

The engine must never be run with the battery disconnected.

The battery (A) is maintenance free and should only require checking by your Aston Martin Dealer during regular vehicle services.

Apart from vehicle recovery, this vehicle must not be driven if the vehicle battery is incapable of starting the engine. In this case the vehicle battery must be replaced. Contact your Aston Martin Dealer.



⚠ Warning ⚠
Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

⚠ Warning ⚠
When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Keep batteries out of reach of children.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Batteries contain sulphuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Battery Disposal

Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner.

Follow your local authorised standards for disposal. Call your local authorised recycling centre to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.

Battery Charge

Various systems, for example, the clock, security systems and Infotainment centre system continue to drain battery power even with the ignition switched OFF.

A **new fully charged** battery has the ability to start this vehicle, if left unused, for up to 45 days without the battery conditioner being used (Refer to 'Battery Conditioner', page 11.25) or the Battery Disconnect switch being activated (Refer to 'Battery Disconnect Switch (BDS)', page 11.27).

In cold climates this time may be reduced.

For vehicles installed with the Aston Martin Tracking system this time will reduce to approximately 22 days.

Battery charge can be drained excessively in a number of ways:

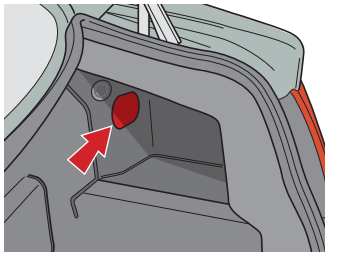
- If the vehicle is unused for long periods of time

Aston Martin recommend that if this vehicle is to be left unused for ten (10) days or more the battery conditioner (mains power available) or the BDS (mains power not available) should be used.

- If the vehicle is used regularly but only for short journeys, e.g. less than 48 km (30 mile) a journey
- If electrical systems are in use without the vehicle engine running
- If the vehicle key is left in the Ignition Control for long periods of time without the engine running

Excessive battery drain would ultimately mean that the battery would not be able to start the engine.

This vehicle has two methods of maintaining battery charge at an acceptable level if the vehicle is unused for long periods of time.



- Battery Conditioner (mains power required)
- Battery Disconnect Switch (BDS)

Battery Conditioner

If this vehicle is not going to be used for a period of time, and **mains power is available**, use the battery conditioner to maintain the battery charge level.

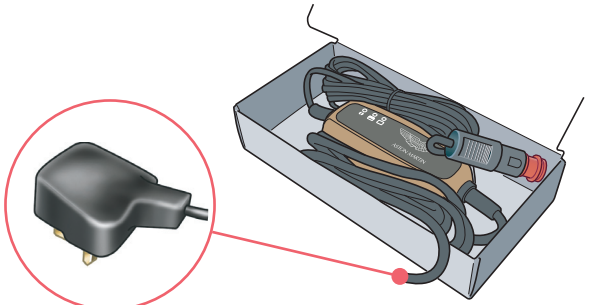
⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not attempt to start the vehicle with the battery conditioner connected to the mains supply.

⚠ Warning ⚠
Do not smoke. Prevent flames and sparks. Explosive gasses are given off by batteries during charging.

For indoor use only. Disconnect mains supply before making or breaking battery connections.

Ensure the vehicle is in a secure area.

The battery conditioner supplied with the vehicle is suitable for use on all types of 12 volt lead acid batteries.



The battery conditioner is designed for conditioning of partially or fully charged batteries. It will not effectively charge a discharged battery.

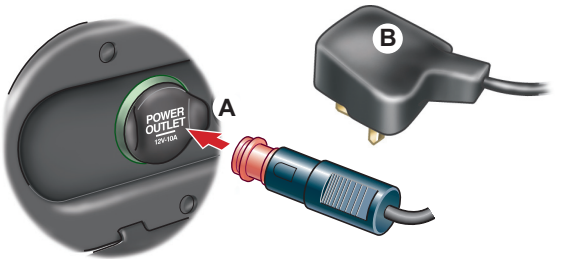
When connected the battery conditioner will maintain a small trickle charge to keep the battery in a fully charged state. The battery conditioner may be left in this state indefinitely.

To Connect the Battery Conditioner

1. Insert the accessory socket plug into the accessory socket (A).
2. Insert the mains plug (B) into the mains supply.

Gently close, but do not latch, the boot lid. This avoids possible damage to the boot water seal from the battery conditioner power cable.

With the boot left open the vehicle doors can be locked and armed (Refer to 'Leaving the Boot Open While the Vehicle is Locked', page 2.11).



To remove the battery conditioner first disconnect from the mains supply, then from the vehicle socket.

Battery Disconnect Switch (BDS)

If this vehicle is not going to be used for a period of time, and **mains power is not available**, use the Battery Disconnect Switch (BDS) to shut down all electrical systems, except:

- Clock
- Alarm functions
- Engine immobiliser (PATS)
- Door window memory
- Vehicle access, via the vehicle key

This will allow this vehicle to remain unused for up to 70 days (approximately) without any long term damage to the battery.



For vehicles installed with the Aston Martin Tracking system this time will reduce to approximately 31 days.

Once the BDS is activated the glovebox is locked (for added security). The Owner's Guidebook will not be accessible.

To reactivate the electrical systems open the driver's door and insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control.

The radio preset stations will require reprogramming (Refer to 'Audio', page 8.1)

FAQ

Can the BDS be activated while driving?

No – The BDS can not be activated while the vehicle key is in positions 'I' and 'II'.

What if I press the BDS by accident?

In this situation you would not be able to start the vehicle. To reactivate the electrical systems insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control.

Battery Protection Mode

Using the vehicle electrical systems, i.e. the infotainment system, with the vehicle key at position 'I' (ignition OFF) will drain the battery charge. Eventually the battery will drain to such a low level that it will not start the engine.

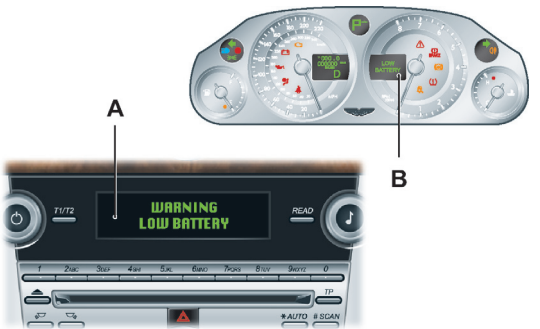
Replace the battery as soon as possible, if the battery is not capable of starting the engine.

To avoid this happening, a series of safety mechanisms shut down nonessential electrical systems before excessive battery drain takes place.

Warning messages will appear indicating the state of the battery charge.

FAQ

What is the first indication of battery protection mode?



A **- 'Warning - Low Battery'** (For 10 seconds).

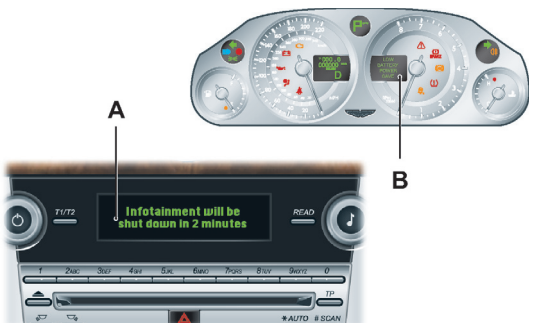
B **- 'Low Battery'.**

What should I do next?

Turn OFF all unnecessary electrical systems to reduce battery drain. Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

What happens if I ignore the warning messages?

After approximately two to ten minutes (dependent on the rate of battery charge drain) the following messages will appear:



***A* - 'Infotainment will be shut down 2 minutes'** (For ten seconds).

***B* - 'Low Battery Power Save'.**

If the audio is ON the sound will mute for ten seconds and a short 'Beep' will be heard when the message is first displayed.

What should I do if these messages are displayed?

Turn OFF all unnecessary electrical systems. Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

What happens if I ignore second warning messages?

The infotainment system will shut down in two minutes. No other electrical system will be shut down. This significantly reduces the rate of battery drain. The following functionality will be lost:

- CD Player
- Navigation System
- Radio Tuner

What should I do if the infotainment system shuts down?

Start the engine to recharge the battery. Run the engine for a reasonable length of time.

The infotainment system will not operate without the engine running until the battery has regained it's charge.

With the engine running the infotainment system will start up.

What is a reasonable length of time to run the engine?

The vehicle battery normally requires a journey of approximately 48 km (30 mile) to recharge. Additionally, use the battery conditioner to restore the vehicle battery charge.

What if I cannot restart the engine?

If the battery has been run down to a point where it will not start the engine then an external battery charger will be required or your vehicle will require a 'jump start' (Refer to 'Electrical Start From Another Vehicle', page 11.30).

Replace the battery as soon as possible, if the battery is not capable of starting the engine.

Electrical Start From Another Vehicle

(Jump Start)

Apart from vehicle recovery, this vehicle must not be driven if the vehicle battery is incapable of starting the engine. In this case the vehicle battery must be replaced.

If the voltage or earth of the donor vehicle is different or not known, do not attempt starting in the way described.

If this vehicle will not start due to a discharged battery, it may be started, **for vehicle recovery**, by connecting the battery from another vehicle (donor) to this vehicle (recipient).

⚠ Warning ⚠

The donor vehicle must have a 12 volt battery and a negative (-), black earth terminal to ensure that the correct battery polarity is maintained.

Jump Start Procedure

1. Position the vehicles so that the connecting cables will reach into the recipient engine bay. Apply the handbrake and switch the ignition OFF.

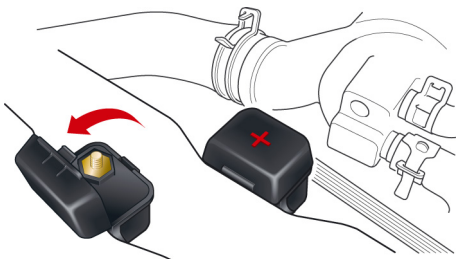
Remove rings, metal watch bands and any other jewellery.

Turn OFF all electrical motors and ancillaries in both vehicles.

Switch OFF all lamps except those needed to protect vehicles or illuminate work area.

2. Access the jump start terminal in the recipient engine bay.

3. Connect the + ve (red) cable between the '+ve' (red) terminal of the donor battery and the jump start terminal of the recipient vehicle.



4. Connect the '-ve' (black) cable between the '-ve' (black) terminal of the donor battery and a good earth (-ve) point in the recipient engine bay (i.e. alternator mounting bracket).
5. Start the donor vehicle engine and run at about 1500 – 2000 rpm.
6. Start the engine of the recipient vehicle.

Recharge time will depend on the initial 'state of health' of discharged battery.

7. Once both vehicles are running remove the jump start cables (first the '- ve' (black) cable from both vehicles and then the '+ve' (red) cable from both vehicles).

   Allow the recipient engine to run until the discharged battery is sufficiently recharged (15 to 20 minutes) to start the engine without assistance.

   Switch OFF and restart the recipient engine. Take the vehicle on a long run to fully charge the battery.

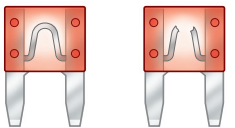
If this vehicle will not start consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

   Contact your Aston Martin Dealer to have the battery checked or replaced.

Fuses

The electrical system is protected by fuses. If any lamps, accessories, or controls don't work, inspect the appropriate circuit protector.

If a fuse has blown, the inside element will be melted. If the same fuse blows again, avoid using that system and consult your Aston Martin Dealer as soon as possible.



Normal Blown

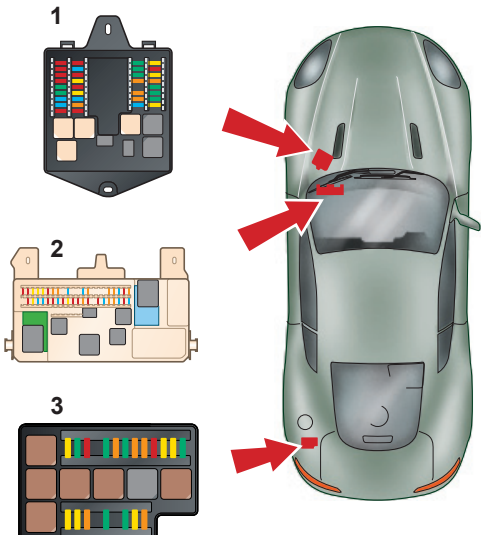
Fusebox Location

Engine Bay fuse box – Passenger Side.

Cabin fuse box – Passenger Footwell.

Boot fuse box – LH side of boot.

(Illustration – RH drive)



Engine Bay Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F1	10A	Keep alive power PCM (Bank B)
F2	10A	Aston Martin Tracking system
F3	10A	Not Available
F4	20A	Engine management (PCM A)
F5	20A	Engine management (PCM B)
F6	15A	Exhaust Gas Oxygen (HEGO) sensors / Catalyst monitor sensor (CMS) (Bank B)
F7	15A	Coils 7-12 / Suppressor solenoids (Bank B)
F8	10A	Engine coolant level sensor
F9	20A	Injectors 7-12 / Mass air flow sensor (MAF) (Bank B)
F10	10A	A/C clutch

Engine Bay Fuses		
Fuse	**Rating**	**Function**
F11	15A	Horn
F12	10A	Keep alive power PCM (Bank A)
F13	20A	Injectors 1-6 / Mass air flow sensor (MAF) (Bank A)
F14	10A	Vapour Management Valve (VMV) (Bank A)
F15	25A	Starter motor solenoid
F16	15A	Coils 1-6 / Suppressor solenoids (Bank A)
F17	5A	Glove box release solenoid
F18	15A	Exhaust Gas Oxygen (HEGO) sensors / Catalyst monitor sensor (CMS) (Bank A)
F19	30A	ABS module / Battery feed
F20	30A	ABS module / Battery feed
F21	30A	Not Available

Engine Bay Fuses		
Fuse	**Rating**	**Function**
F22	5A	Not Available
F23		Not Available
F24	5A	Not Available
F25	5A	Not Available
F26	20A	Headlamp wash pump
F27	25A	Not Available
F28	10A	ABS module, Steering angle sensor / Vehicle key reader / Fuel tank diagnostics
F29	25A	Not Available
F30	5A	Not Available
F31	30A	Not Available
F32	30A	Wiper motor (slow)

Engine Bay Fuses		
Fuse	**Rating**	**Function**
F33	30A	Wiper motor (fast)
F34	20A	Electric steering column lock
F35	60A	Cooling fan module

Cabin Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F43	10A	Multi media module display / Media player / Integrated audio module
F44	10A	Airbag module
F45	15A	Not Available
F46	5A	Deployable Rollbars (Volante) / Convertible roof switch (Volante) / Driver Information / Master lamp switch / Glovebox solenoid / Battery OFF switch / Master locking switch / Centre console module
F47	5A	Glovebox switch / Fuel flap release / Garage door opener / Interior lamps (front / footwell / rear) / Boot lamps / Seat switches / Boot accessory socket illumination
F48	15A	Front windscreen washer relay and pump
F49	10A	Airbag module / Power seats

Cabin Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F50	5A	Not Available
F51	10A	Dynamic stability control / Diagnostic inputs / Parking aid module
F52	5A	Tracker module
F53	10A	Headlamp levelling module / Power steering module
F54	10A	Engine fuse box, Boot fuse box / Tyre pressure sensing
F55	20A	Accessory socket / Cigar Lighter
F56	10A	Centre console module / Sounder module / Hands-free phone module
F57	15A	Diagnostic connectors / Brake pedal switch
F58	10A	High beam (RH) / Headlamp Levelling module
F59	10A	High beam (LH)
F60	15A	Drivers seat heater

Cabin Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F61	15A	Passenger seat heater
F62	20A	A/C module
F63	20A	Not Available
F64	5A	Global positioning system module / Traffic monitoring control (TMC) receiver
F65	5A	Multi media module / Multi media display / Integrated audio module / AM/FM & TMC antenna amplifiers
F66	10A	Auxiliary socket module
F67	15A	Spare
F68	5A	Not Available
F69	5A	Convertible roof module (Volante)

Cabin Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F70	15A	Not Available
F71		Not Available
F72		Not Available
F73	5A	Not Available
F74	15A	Fuel pump
F75		Not Available
F76		Not Available
F77	15A	Rear power socket / Battery disconnect module
F78		Not Available
F79	5A	Reversing Lamps / Parking Aid Module / Garage Door Opener
F80	5A	Battery OFF switch
F81	20A	Ignition Control

Cabin Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F82	25A	Passenger door module
F83	25A	Driver door module
F84	30A	Passenger seat power and switch pack
F85	30A	Driver seat power and switch pack
F86	5A	Ignition Control

Boot Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F1	5A	Convertible deck lid lock motors (Volante)
F2	20A	Not Available
F3	30A	Heated rear windscreen
F4	20A	Rear quarter glass motor LH (Volante)
F5	30A	Audio amplifier
F6	20A	Rear quarter glass motor RH (Volante)
F7	5A	Not Available
F8	30A	Fuel pump module (Bank B)
F9	30A	Fuel pump module (Bank A)
F10	30A	Convertible roof module (Volante)
F11	20A	Not Available

Boot Fuses

Fuse	Rating	Function
F12	20A	Transmission control module (Automatic)
F13	10A	Not Available
F14	5A	Not Available
F15	5A	Transmission control module (Automatic)
F16	30A	Convertible roof pump (Volante)
F17	5A	Boot lamps / Boot power socket illumination
F18	30A	Audio amplifier
F19	5A	Not Available
F20	10A	Not Available
F21	30A	Convertible deck lid lock motors (Volante)
F22	20A	Exhaust bypass valve and vacuum pump

Bulbs

Bulb Kit

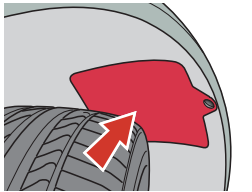
Any bulb used from the kit should be replaced at the earliest opportunity so that a full bulb kit is always available.

Specification	Type
Main beam	12V 65W (H9)
Front direction indicators	12V 27W (PY27W)
Footwell lamp	12V 5W (W5W)
Registration plate / Door lamp	12V 5W (W5W (Festoon))

Headlamp Units: Condensation

The headlamp units will generate condensation under certain conditions. However, this should clear after approximately 10 minutes.

Headlamp Bulbs



The headlamp bulbs are accessed through an access panel in each wheel arch liner.

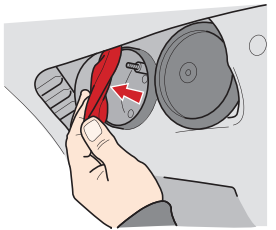
Turn the steering to the opposite lock from the defective bulb. Using a flat blade, i.e. a screwdriver or a small coin, release the screw on the access panel. Remove the access panel.

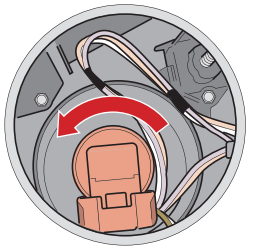
Main Beam Bulb

⚠ Warning ⚠

Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

1. Remove the rubber cover.
2. Rotate the headlamp bulb unit a quarter turn anticlockwise. Withdraw the unit and disconnect the wiring harness plug.





3. Connect a new bulb unit, insert the new bulb unit and turn a quarter turn clockwise to lock. Install the rubber cover and access panel.

Bulb specification – (Refer to 'Bulbs', page 12.8)

Dipped Beam Bulb

High Intensity Discharge (HID) bulbs are used for dipped beam.

⚠ Warning ⚠

High Intensity Discharge (HID) bulbs produce a very high voltage. They should only be serviced by an Aston Martin Dealership.

HID systems produce a brilliant white light by establishing a high-voltage electrical arc between two electrodes within a sealed glass tube. Once the arc is established, the voltage lowers to normal operating conditions.

HID bulbs are not renewable. Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer if a HID bulb fails to operate.

Continental Driving (UK Only)

UK owners wishing to take this vehicle to the continent contact your Aston Martin Dealer for headlight and dipped beam alignment checks and adjustments.

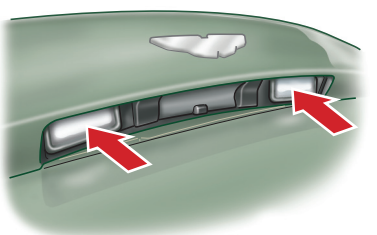
Front Indicator and Side Lamps

If a front indicator and / or a side lamp bulb fails to operate, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Registration Plate Lamps

1. Remove the trim panel from the underside of the boot lid.
2. Twist, anticlockwise, and withdraw the bulb holder. Remove the defective bulb and replace with a new one.
3. Twist the bulb holder back into in position. Replace the boot trim panel.

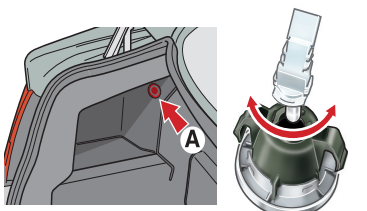
Bulb specification – (Refer to 'Bulbs', page 12.8)



Boot Lamp

1. Taking care not to damage the vehicle trim, lever out the lens unit (A).
2. Twist, anticlockwise, and remove the bulb holder. Replace the defective bulb.
3. Install the bulb holder and clip the lens unit into it's housing.

Bulb specification – (Refer to 'Bulbs', page 12.8).



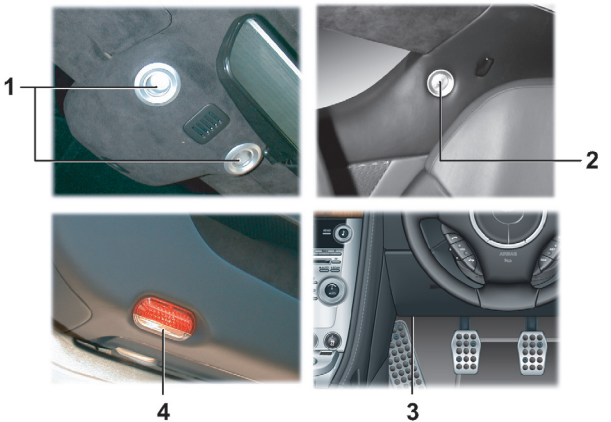
Interior Lamps

1	Map
2	Quarter panel
3	Footwell
4	Door

1. Taking care not to damage the vehicle trim, lever out the lens unit.
2. Replace the defective bulb.

   Door lamp only: Open the access flap and replace the defective bulb
3. Press the lens unit into its housing until it clips into position.

Bulb specification – (Refer to 'Bulbs', page 12.8)



Rear Lamps

The Indicators, Stop / Tail, Reversing and Rear Fog LEDs are contained in a sealed lamp cluster unit, one either side of the vehicle. The lamp cluster is not repairable.

The high level mounted stop lamp unit consists of LEDs and is not repairable.

LEDs can last tens of thousands of hours and are resistant to heat, cold, shock and vibration.

If a rear lamp fails contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Door Window Reset

If power to the electric windows has been interrupted for any reason, they will fail to operate correctly until reset.

1. Sit in the driver's seat. Close both doors, insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and move to position 'I'.
2. Press firmly and hold the window switch until the window is at the maximum down position. Continue to hold the button for five seconds then release.
3. Pull back and hold the window switch until the window is in the maximum up position. Continue to hold the switch for a further five seconds, then release.
4. The window is now reset. Repeat for the second window.

Bodywork and Fittings

Checks and Maintenance

Door drain holes

Check the drain holes in the bottom face of each door periodically and clear if necessary with, i.e. a short length of wire or a pipe cleaner.

Vehicle Cleaning

Paint Work

Modern water based paints are much safer and more environmentally friendly than solvent based paints. Water based paints are however more susceptible to contamination and marking by corrosive substances. The following list is not exhaustive but does indicate the most common contaminants which may adversely affect your paint work:

Other groups of contaminants may be added to this list as experience of water based paints and finishes increases.

- Bird Droppings
- Tree Sap
- Insect Remains
- Antifreeze
- Oils and Greases

Wash such substances from the car using clean warm water with car shampoo, at the earliest opportunity, especially in sunny weather which can accelerate contamination.

Washing

⚠ Warning ⚠

Washing and polishing agents containing silicone should not be applied to glass. This will reduce the efficiency of the windscreen wipers, causing smears which will reduce visibility, particularly during darkness and in the rain.

Commercially operated automatic car washes, jet washes and power-operated mops are not recommended. The detergents used are, generally, of a high PH content which may, over time, damage the vehicle paint work. Prolonged usage of automatic car washes and power-operated mops will also cause fine scratches in the paint surface.

For best results, do not wash the vehicle in strong sunlight. Allow the vehicle to cool before washing. Do not use household soaps or detergents. Do not direct hoses at full force around the door and boot seals.

When washing the vehicle, first hose it down first to remove all dust and mud residue.

When dust and mud have been removed wash gently using a soft sponge using cold / warm water with a mild neutral detergent as directed by the manufacturers. Rinse thoroughly with a hose to remove all traces of soapy water. Finally dry with a chamois leather, which should be rinsed regularly in clean water.

To delay the onset of corrosion developing on the brake discs Aston Martin recommend that after washing this vehicle, the vehicle should be driven a short distance to ensure that all water / washing product has dried off.

Wash and clean the vehicle's front grill in the same way as the paint work, but ensure that the front grill is dried off completely leaving no water droplets on the grill (wipe the front grill last using a chamois leather): Chrome polish or other abrasive cleaners must not be used.

Aston Martin recommends the use of 'AUTOGLYM' car care products or preparations of similar reputable manufacture for adding to the washing water.

During the winter months, it is advisable to wash the car more frequently, paying particular attention to the underside to combat the detrimental effects of any salt and sand contamination picked up from treated roads.

Polishing

Approximately twice a year, a good quality polish should be applied and then buffed, using a soft lint-free cloth.

Alloy wheel rims should be treated with a cleaner which is specifically manufactured for this purpose.

Convertible Roof Fabric (Volante)

Do not use automatic vehicle washes. Brushes, detergents and pressurised water jets may damage the roof fabric.

Do not use power washers. Jets of water may damage the weather seals and the roof fabric.

Do not use spot cleaners, chemical diluents or any organic cleaners. If in doubt, contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

To maintain the appearance and condition of the convertible roof fabric the cleaning and reproof recommendations given below should be followed.

This is of particular importance in the case of light coloured roof fabrics.

Do not leave the convertible roof in the lowered (folded) position for longer than necessary. In certain circumstances permanent soiling along folds may occur.

Cleaning

Remove bird droppings as soon as possible. The organic acids in bird lime can adversely affect the convertible roof fabric.

Carefully vacuum clean the roof fabric to remove any loose particles. Gently, and evenly, wash the roof fabric using a mild soap solution and a soft brush.

A hard brush will damage the fabric fibres.

Rinse the roof fabric thoroughly with clean water to remove any traces of soap. Allow the roof fabric to completely dry before operating the roof.

Reproofs

Due to its construction the roof fabric will remain watertight without re-proofing. However to retain the appearance of the roof, to reduce soiling and to improve the drying time Aston Martin recommended that the roof is re-proofed annually, by your Aston Martin Dealer.

Upholstery, Carpets and Seats

The seats and soft trimmed components of this vehicle are covered in natural leather hide.

In general, this natural leather upholstery requires little attention. The seats should be brushed with a soft brush from time to time and may be cleaned occasionally with a cloth damped in soap and water. **Do not** use detergents, quick cleansers or furniture polishes.

Several times a year, a leather conditioner or preservative should be used. Appropriate care materials are obtainable from your Aston Martin Dealer.

⚠ Warning ⚠

Fumes from cleaning solvents may be dangerous in confined spaces. Make sure that the car is well ventilated and follow the manufacturer's printed instructions when using these products

Alcantara roof linings and other soft trimmed areas may be brushed with a soft brush. Stains from water based substances such as coffee, tea or soft drinks should be cleaned as soon as possible with mild soap and water. Please consult your Aston Martin Dealer for instructions on the removal of more difficult stains such as oil, grease or ballpoint ink.

Carpets should be cleaned regularly with a vacuum cleaner. Any stains or grease marks should be removed with a good quality solvent suitable for use on carpets.

Care and Maintenance of Seat Belts

To ensure that restraint webbings are in proper working order, regularly check the seat belts. Look for fraying, cuts, burns and similar problems. Ensure that the latches and buckles function correctly. If a seat belt is not in good condition or is not working properly, consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Any seat belt that has been worn during a serious collision should be replaced by an Aston Martin Dealer.

Do not allow seat belts to be retracted until they are completely dry.

To clean the seat belts, use mild soap and water; do not use bleach, solvents or dyes as they can weaken the material. Allow the seat belts to dry thoroughly before use.

Under Bonnet Cleaning

Under bonnet cleaning using high pressure hoses or steam cleaners should not be carried out. The electronic control module connections and fuse boxes can be damaged by indiscriminate use of high pressure cleaning equipment.

Vehicle Storage

Recommendations

These recommendations apply to new and pre-owned cars either in Dealer or Customer ownership.

If your vehicle is not to be used for periods in excess of three months it should be stored in a dry, well ventilated building.

1. Drive your vehicle for a sufficient distance to warm the oil in the engine and the transaxle; this ensures complete lubrication of the internal components.
2. Check the engine coolant level. Top up if necessary with the correct antifreeze / water solution.
3. In order to take the weight off the tyres, raise the vehicle with a jack and place supports under the front and rear suspension.

4. If the vehicle is not raised from the ground, increase the tyre pressures to 3.4 bar (340 kpa / 50 psi). Cover the tyres to exclude any light. Rotate the wheels ¼ turn every month to avoid tyre flat spots.
5. **Volante only**.

   Close the convertible roof.

Do not leave the convertible roof in the lowered (folded) position for longer than necessary. In certain circumstances permanent soiling along folds may occur.

6. If mains power is available, connect and switch the battery conditioner ON to maintain the battery in a fully charged state. If mains power is not available, press the battery disconnect switch to reduce quiescent drain to a minimum.
7. Once a month:
   1 Disconnect the battery conditioner or connect the battery by pressing the battery reconnect switch.
   2 Start and run the engine until it is fully warmed up.
   3 Check there are no fluid leaks.
   4 Switch OFF the engine.
   5 Connect the battery conditioner or press the battery disconnect switch.
   6 Check and correct tyre pressures if necessary.

When returning the vehicle to normal service, set the tyre pressures to normal specification before driving on the road.

Extended Storage

For storage periods exceeding six months the following measures are recommended;

Do Not Drain Fuel System.

1. Run the engine until there is as small a quantity of fuel in the tank as is practical for storage purposes.
2. Add engine oil to remaining fuel in the tank to ensure a concentration of 2% (i.e. 20ml per 1 litre of fuel), then run engine for not less than ten minutes to circulate mixture thoroughly through the entire fuel system.
3. Inspect rubber connections of coolant system and have them renewed if necessary.

4. Wash bodywork of vehicle thoroughly and repair any paint blisters or patches of corrosion in order to prevent any further deterioration.

   Apply a suitable polish.
5. Clean carpets and upholstery thoroughly. Treat all leather upholstery with an application of a leather conditioner or preservative.
6. If the storage building is dry leave vehicle windows slightly open. If there is any tendency towards dampness close vehicle doors and windows and place an anti-moisture compound such as Silica desiccant bags in an open metal container inside vehicle.
7. Cover vehicle with a cotton or fabric cover.

Re-commissioning after Storage

Provided that the vehicle has been stored in accordance with the recommended procedure, the following points only should require attention before using your vehicle on the road.

1. Check the tyre pressures, inflate if necessary, lower the vehicle to ground.
2. Drain the engine sump and the final drive unit, install a new engine oil filter element, then fill the engine and the final drive unit with approved oils. Check the coolant level and, if necessary, top-up with the correct antifreeze to water solution.
3. Check all fluid levels and top-up as necessary. Fill the fuel tank.

Starting the engine without sufficient lubrication can cause serious engine damage. Ensure engine oil pressure is established before allowing the engine to start.

4. Obtain engine oil pressure:
   - 4.1 Press and hold the accelerator **hard to the floor** (This temporarily inhibits the fuel injection during cranking).
   - 4.2 Fully press the brake (automatic) or clutch (manual) pedal down. Insert the vehicle key into the Ignition Control and move through to engine start. Allow the engine to crank until the oil pressure icon (on the instrument pack) extinguishes, indicating oil pressure in the engine.
   - 4.3 Release the vehicle key and accelerator pedal.

5. Start the engine normally and check that the oil pressure and ignition warning lamps go out as the engine starts, indicating correct oil pressure and battery charging.
6. Raise the bonnet and check for leaks of fuel, oil and coolant.
7. **Volante only**.

   Check the operation of the convertible roof and check for oil leaks.

   If the convertible roof does not operate correctly during first use, operate the roof a few times (with the engine running to keep the battery at full voltage). If the roof still does not operate correctly contact your Aston Martin Dealer.
8. Carefully test drive your vehicle and check the operation of all functions.

Braking performance can be impaired, initially, due to a fine film of corrosion on the brake disc surface. Drive conservatively and, when **safe to do so**, frequently apply the brakes until disc surfaces have been cleaned. Full braking performance should then be restored.

If in any doubt about the condition of your vehicle, have it checked by your Aston Martin Dealer.

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Specifications

Contents

Engine 12.2
Performance 12.2
Power and Torque Graph 12.3
Electrics 12.4
Transmission 12.4
Steering 12.5
Suspension 12.5
Brakes 12.5
Wheels 12.6
Tyres 12.7
Bulbs 12.8
Vehicle Specification 12.8
Vehicle Weights 12.8
Exterior Dimensions 12.9
Interior Dimensions 12.12
Interior Features 12.12
Exterior Features 12.13
Fluids 12.13
Capacities 12.14

Engine

All alloy, quad overhead cam 48 valve V12

Fuel	Recommended 98 RON Super Unleaded for optimum performance. 95 RON minimum.
Fuel Delivery System	Multi-point sequential fuel injection
Capacity	5935 cc
Firing Order	1 - 7 - 5 - 11 - 3 - 9 - 6 - 12 - 2 - 8 - 4 - 10
Idle Speed	750 rpm
Bore	89.0 mm (3.504 in)
Stroke	79.5 mm (3.13 in)
Spark Plugs	NGK – PTR6E-13
Spark Plug Gap	1.3 mm (0.05 in)± 0.1 mm (0.004 in)

Compression Ratio	10.2:1
Ignition	'Coil on Plug' ignition system
Emission control	8 Oxygen sensors (4 per exhaust branch) 2 three-way catalytic convertors (1 per exhaust branch) Evaporative loss purge
Lubrication	Wet sump pressurised lubrication

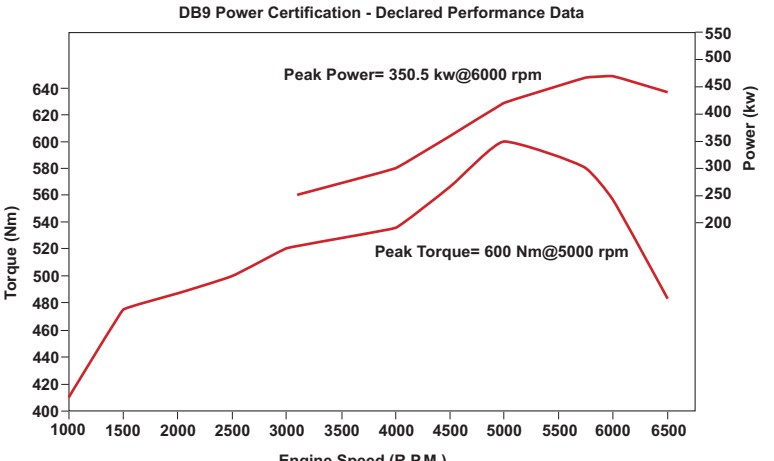
Performance

	Manual Transmission
Max Power	350.5 kw (470 bhp) @ 6000 r.p.m.
Max Torque	600 Nm. (442.5 lb./ft.) @ 5000 r.p.m.
Max Speed	
Coupe	305 km/h (190 m.p.h.) (where permitted)
Volante	305 km/h (190 m.p.h.) (where permitted)
0-60 m.p.h.	4.6 seconds
0-100 km/h	4.8 seconds
Max Engine Speed	7200 rpm

	Automatic Transmission
Max Power	350.5 kw (470 bhp) @ 6000 rpm
Max Torque	600 Nm. (442.5 lb./ft.) @ 5000 rpm
Max Speed	
Coupe	305 km/h (190 m.p.h.) (where permitted)
Volante	305 km/h (190 m.p.h.) (where permitted)
0-60 m.p.h.	4.3 seconds
0-100 km/h	4.5 seconds
Max Engine Speed	7200 rpm

Power and Torque Graph

82% of maximum torque is produced at only 1500 rpm.



Electrics

Alternator	Denso SC2 150 Amps
Voltage Regulation	14.4V ±0.5V @ 20°C (68°F)
Battery	Varta 90AH.

Transmission

Automatic Transmission

ZF 6HP26 six speed with 'Shift by Wire' (SBW) gear shift technology.

Gear Ratios	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th
	4.17:1	2.34:1	1.52:1	1.14:1	0.87:1	0.69:1

Reverse
3.40:1

Manual Transmission

Graziano six speed transmission with integrated shifter bellcrank system (Cable Operated).

Gear Ratios	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th
	3.15:1	1.97:1	1.44:1	1.15:1	0.94:1	0.76:1

Reverse
2.39:1

Final Drive

	Manual	**Automatic**
Ratio	3.54:1	3.15:1

Limited slip differential.

Steering

Rack and pinion, servotronic speed-sensitive power-assisted steering. Column tilt and reach adjustments.

Turns lock to lock		3.0
Turning Circle		11.5 m (37.5 ft.) (Kerb to Kerb)
Toe-In	Front	0.08° (± 0.07°) (5′ (±4′))
	Rear	0.33° (+ 0.17° / – 0.0°) (20′ (+10′ / - 0.0′))
	With the vehicle at it's design weight. Refer to your Aston Martin Dealer.	

Suspension

Front	Aluminium independent double wishbone incorporating anti-dive geometry. Coil over aluminium monotube dampers and anti-roll bar.
Rear	Aluminium independent double wishbone incorporating longitudinal control arms, coil over aluminium monotube dampers and anti-roll bar.

Brakes

Ventilated and grooved steel discs all round.

Front Discs	355 mm (14 in) diameter
Rear Discs	330 mm (13 in) diameter
Callipers	Radial-mounted four-piston monobloc.
Handbrake	Lever and cable operated independent handbrake callipers on each rear brake disc.

Anti Lock Braking System (ABS), Electronic Brakeforce Distribution (EBD), Emergency Brake Assist (EBA), Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) and Traction Control (TCS).

Wheels

⚠ Warning ⚠

Install winter wheels and tyres to both axles before the onset of severe winter weather conditions.

Standard Wheels

Front	Aston Martin aluminium alloy wheels, 8.5J x 19
Rear	Aston Martin aluminium alloy wheels, 9.5J x 19

SportPack Wheels

Front	Lightweight forged aluminium alloy wheels, 8.5J x 19"
Rear	Lightweight forged aluminium alloy wheels, 9.5J x 19"

Winter Wheels

Front	Aston Martin aluminium alloy wheels, 8 x 18
Rear	Aston Martin aluminium alloy wheels, 9 x 18

Wheel Nut Torque

Tighten every second nut until all five nuts are tightened.

Tighten all wheel nuts in two stages.



1. To 80 Nm. (60 lb. / ft.) in one continuous movement.
2. To 180 Nm. (133 lb. / ft.) in one continuous movement.

Tyres

⚠ Warning ⚠

Install winter wheels and tyres to both axles before the onset of severe winter weather conditions.

Tyre Loading

Tyres installed to this vehicle shall have a maximum load rating not less than 630 kg (1389 lb.) (front) and 710 kg (1565 lb.) (rear), or a load index of 92 (front) and 96 (rear) and a speed category of ZR.

The Original Equipment tyres installed to this vehicle are an approved specification, designated by 'AM9' on the sidewall.

Front	Bridgstone RE050 235/40 ZR 19
Rear	Bridgstone RE050 275/35 ZR 19

	Pressures (Cold Inflation)
Front	2.5 bar (250 kPa / 36psi)
Rear	2.6 bar (260 kPa / 38psi)

Winter Tyres

⚠ Warning ⚠

Maximum speed with winter tyres is 240 km/h (150 m.p.h.).

Front	Pirelli W240SN 225/45 R18
Rear	Pirelli W240SN 255/40 R18

	Pressures (Cold Inflation)
Front	2.5 bar (250 kPa / 36psi)
Rear	2.5 bar (250 kPa / 36psi)

Snow chains may only be installed to the driven (rear) road wheels. Consult your Aston Martin Dealer.

Bulbs

	Rating	Type
Headlamp dipped beam	35W	D1S HID
Headlamp main beam	65W	H9
Front Indicator lamps	27W	PY27W
Parking lamp / Footwell lamps	5W	W5W
Door lamps	5W	C5W
Side Repeater	5W	WY5W
Rear quarter lamps / Boot lamp / Reading lamps	3W	W3W
High Mounted Stop Lamp		LED
Number plate lamps	5W	W5W

The rear lamp cluster is a sealed unit. If any rear cluster lamp fails to operate contact your Aston Martin Dealer.

Vehicle Specification

Body

- Two door Coupe / 2+2 seating
- Two door Volante / 2+2 seating

Extruded aluminium bonded body structure with aluminium and composite body panels. Extruded aluminium door side impact beams.

Towing

This vehicle is not engineered to tow any form of caravan, boat or trailer.

No towing devices are approved for installing to this vehicle, other than a front towing eye to aid recovery or loading of this vehicle onto a transporter.

Vehicle Weights

Kerb Weight

	Manual	Automatic
Coupe	1760 kg (3880 lb.)	1800 kg (3970 lb.)
Volante	1815 kg (4000 lb.)	1855 kg (4090 lb.)

Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)

	Manual	Automatic
Coupe	2060 kgs (4540 lb.)	2100 kg (4630 lb.)
Volante	2115 kgs (4665 lb.)	2155 kg (4750 lb.)

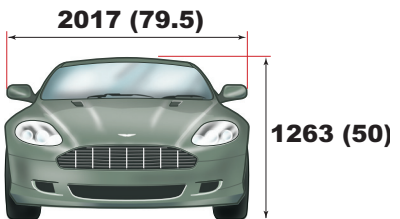
Boot Maximum Load

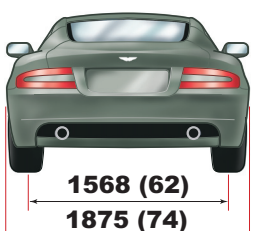
40 kg (88 lb.) evenly distributed

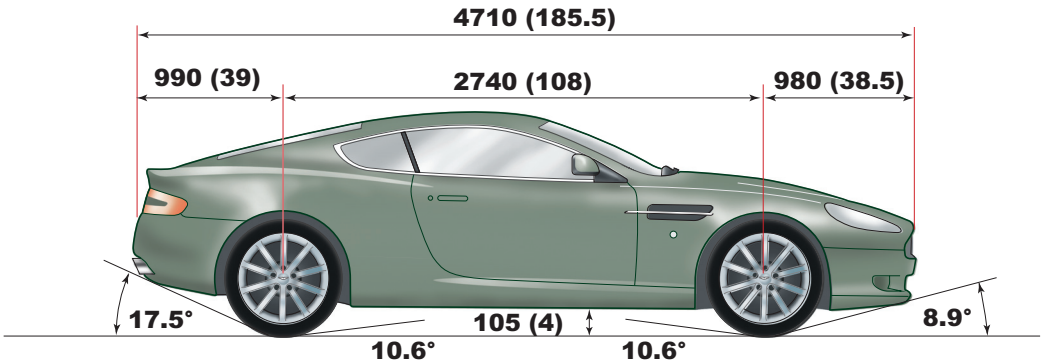
Exterior Dimensions

Coupe

mm (inch)



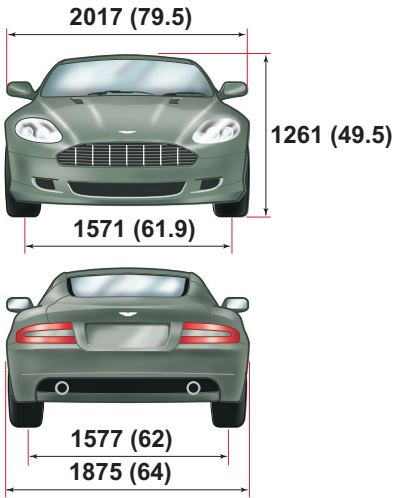


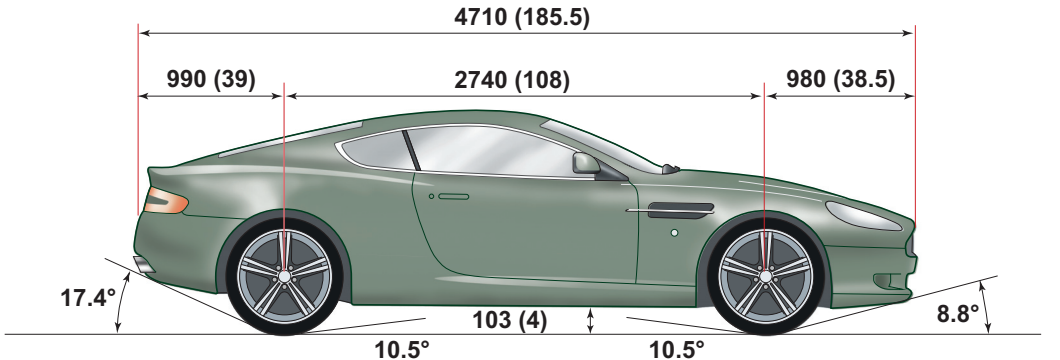


Ride height is measured at GVW.

Coupe SportPack

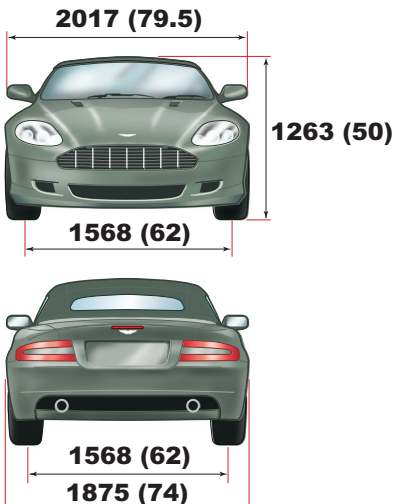
mm (inch)





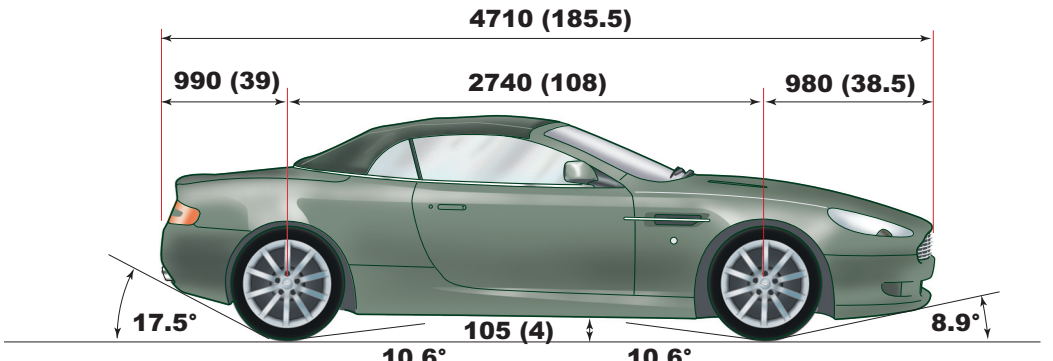
Ride height is measured at GVW.

Volante



mm (inch)

The minimum headroom required to open or close the convertible roof is 1531mm (60 in).



Ride height is measured at GVW.

Interior Dimensions

Effective Headroom		
Coupe	Front	932 mm (36.7 in)
	Rear	796 mm (31.3 in)
Volante	Front	921 mm (36.3 in)
	Rear	800 mm (31.5 in)
Shoulder Room	Front	1392 mm (54.8 in)
	Rear	1200 mm (47.2 in)
Hip Room	Front	1410 mm (55.5 in)
	Rear	1242 mm (48.9 in)
Effective Legroom	Front	1086 mm (43 in)
	Rear	695 mm (27.4 in)
Boot Volume		
Coupe		186 ltr (6.6 cu. ft.)
Volante		138 ltr (4.8 cu. ft.)

Interior Features

- Hand-crafted Bridge of Weir leather trim
- Walnut facia veneer (alternative options)
- Polished aluminium and painted alloy details
- Air-conditioning
- Alarm system interacting with the central locking system and PATS immobiliser system
- Driver and front passenger dual-stage airbags and front occupant side airbags
- Ten-direction electrically adjusted front seats (including height adjustment)
- Position memory front seats (including door rear view mirrors)
- Heated front seats (two heat levels)
- Organic electroluminescent (OEL) displays
- Infotainment center
  - Audio system with radio, 6 CD autochanger and 700W Audio System with Dolby Pro Logic II
  - Hands-Free Phone system
  - Menus for Audio, Hands-Free phone system, Satellite Navigation system (Not available in all markets), Vehicle Security
  - Hard Disk Drive (HDD) Satellite Navigation system (Not available in all markets)

Exterior Features

- Door mirrors
  - Heated, electrically adjusted
  - Position memory system
  - Powerfold system
  - Auto fold system
- Electrically operated door windows
- Heated rear windscreen
- Reversing Sensors

Fluids

Engine oil Mobil 1 Recommended (0W-40)

However, if this oil is unavailable, alternatively a fully synthetic 0w-40 oil meeting the specifications detailed below can be used. No other viscosity grades or specifications are acceptable.

Authority	Standard
API	SL / SJ / EC / CF
ACEA	A3 / B3 / B4
ILSAC	GF3

To achieve the required high performance of synthetic lubricants, do not mix with mineral oils.

Engine coolant 50% water, 50% Havoline OAT

Do not mix OAT anti-freeze with glycol based antifreeze.

Automatic transmission fluid	Shell ATFM 1375-4
Automatic transmission final drive oil	Castrol BOT270A[a]
Manual gearbox oil / Final drive	Castrol BOT270A[b]
Brake / Clutch fluid	Castrol Super Response Dot 4
Power steering fluid	Texaco Cold Climate
A/C refrigerant	HFC134A.

a. Only available from Aston Martin Dealers.
b. Only available from Aston Martin Dealers.

Capacities

	Litres (Gallons (UK))
Engine sump (incl. filter)	11 (2.4)
Engine cooling system	15 (3.3)
Screen washer reservoir	6.9 (1.5)
Power Steering reservoir	1.3 (0.3)
Automatic Gearbox / Cooler	9.7 (2.2)
Automatic final drive / Cooler	1.6 (0.4)
Manual Gearbox / Final drive & Cooler	5.0 (1.03)
Fuel Tank	80 (17.6)

Approximately 78 litres (17.2 UK Gallons) usable.

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

Service

Contents

Pre-delivery Inspection A.2
Service Periods A.4
Service Record A.9
Anti Corrosion Inspection A.13
Replacement of Airbag Units A.16
Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners A.16
Field Service Actions A.17
Service Action Recalls A.18

Pre-delivery Inspection

This free series of checks is carried out on the vehicle by the selling dealer before delivery. The checks ensure that you receive a vehicle which matches the high quality standards set by Aston Martin Limited.

Ensure that the entry is stamped and signed as completed.

The following checks will be made:

(1) Levels and Leaks

Engine oil.
Power steering oil.
Brake / Clutch fluid.
Engine coolant level.
Engine coolant specific gravity.
Windscreen washer fluid.
Fuel system.
Transaxle (leak check only).
Battery.

(2) Mechanical Functions

Gear selection (manual).
Clutch operation (manual).
Throttle pedal operation.
Handbrake operation.
Steering column adjustment and lock operation.
Seat adjuster rails.
Bonnet release and catch.
Door operation and locks.
Storage compartments.
Rear view mirror.
Boot release and catch.

(3) Electrical Checks

Battery condition.
Auto transmission gear selection functions.
Heated rear window.
Windscreen washers.
Windscreen wipers.
A/C controls.
Infotainment centre operation (Audio, Satellite Navigation and Bluetooth phone systems).
All speakers.
Reversing lamps.
Registration plate lamps.
Side and headlamps.

(3) Electrical Checks

Brake lamps
Hazard warning lamps.
Instrument illumination and dimmer.
Gauges / warning lamps.
Centre stack controls.
Centre console controls.
Horns.
Reset clock (if necessary).
Rear fog lamps.
Blower motor.
Seat belt warning system.
Security system / Vehicle key.
Interior lamps.
Cigar lighter (option).
All seat functions.
Door window mechanisms.
Door / Boot courtesy lamps.
Central locking system.
Filler flap lock operation.
Door mirror adjustments.
Clutch pedal start inhibit (Manual).
Brake pedal start inhibit (Automatic).
Interrogate DTC codes.
Record battery open-circuit voltage.

(4) Wheels and Tyres

- Install locking road wheel nuts (option).
- Check road wheel nuts torque.
- Tyre pressures.
- Tyre orientation.
- Check colour coded valve collars (tyre pressure monitoring)

(5) Road Test

- Engine.
- Clutch (Manual).
- Transaxle.
- Steering.
- Brakes.
- Wheel balance.
- Dampers.
- Exhaust by-pass system.
- Gear shift operation in all modes.
- Noise, vibration or harshness.
- A/C performance.
- Instruments operation.
- Seat belt and buckle operation.
- Steering wheel alignment.
- Traction control / DSC.
- ABS operation.

(6) Final Checks

- Drive belt tensioner operation.
- Fuel / brake pipe security.
- Fuel / fluid leaks.
- Security of cooling hoses.
- Exhaust catalyst security.

(7) Hand-over Preparation

- Check function of all locks and vehicle keys.
- Clean bodywork / road wheel arch liners. Inspect / rectify.
- Clean off all transit labels.
- Valet Vehicle.
- De-grease windscreen.
- Install carpets.
- Remove interior protection.
- Check Owner's Guide.
- Check tools.
- Install Number plates.
- Tyre sealant system.
- Towing eye.

Odometer:

Applicable Service Actions checked:	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed:	YES	NO

Dealer Stamp Free

Pre-delivery Inspection

Signature..... Date.....

Service Periods

Apart from the initial 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 month service, which ever occurs first, vehicle servicing is every 16,000 km / 10,000 mile / 12 month, which ever occurs first.

1,500 km / 1000 mile / 3 month (Free)

16,000 km / 10,000 mile / 12 month

32,000 km / 20,000 mile / 24 month

48,000 km / 30,000 mile / 36 month

Which ever occurs first.

12 Month To maintain the hydraulic brake system performance, the brake fluid is renewed every 12 month to clear the system of absorbed water vapour.

Initial 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 Month Service (Free)

The selling dealer is responsible for the costs and work involved in performing this free service. The initial service consists of an inspection and oil change service after completion of the first 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 month and includes fine adjustments to compensate for initial 'bedding-in' e.g. handbrake adjustment.

Also, engine oil and filter will be changed to clear any contaminants picked up during the initial running.

The following service schedules are recommended for this vehicle. The schedules may be modified if necessary. Please consult your Aston Martin Dealer for details of any service schedule updates.

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Pre-Maintenance			
x	x	x	Pre-Maintenance Road Test Evaluation
x	x	x	Install vehicle protection kit and wing covers
x	x	x	Check Bulletins / Field Service Actions / Recall status

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Fluids, Filters and Leaks Checks			
x	x	x	Renew engine oil
x	x	x	Renew engine oil filter
x	x	x	Check for engine oil leaks
-	-	x	Renew air cleaner elements
x	x	-	Check manual transaxle for leaks. Top up if required
32,000 km / 20,000 mile / Every 3 Years	96,000 km / 60,000 mile / Every 6 Years	160,000 km / 100,000 mile / Every 10 Years	Check / Top up manual transaxle oil level
Every 64,000 km / 40,000 mile / 4 Years			Renew manual transaxle oil. Clean filter
x	x	x	Check auto gearbox for leaks / top up if required
x	-	-	Check differential for leaks, top up if required (automatic)
-	-	x	Renew differential oil and clean the filter (automatic)

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Every 160,000 km / 100,000 mile / 5 Years			Renew engine coolant - check concentration
x	x	x	Check / top-up engine coolant
x	x	x	Check cooling and heating systems for leaks
x	x	x	Check for fuel leaks
	12 Month		Renew brake / clutch fluid
x	x	x	Check / top-up brake / clutch fluid reservoir
x	x	x	Check / top-up power steering reservoir
x	x	x	Check power steering system for leaks
x	x	x	Check brake hoses, pipes and unions for leaks
x	x	x	Check suspension dampers for leaks
x	x	x	Top-up windscreen / headlamp washer reservoir
x	x	x	Check exhaust system for leaks
x	x	x	Check operation of exhaust by-pass valves
x	x	x	Check A/C system for leaks
-	-	x	Renew pollen filter

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Mechanical Function Checks			
-	x	x	Lubricate all door locks and hinges
-	x	x	Lubricate bonnet secondary catch
-	x	x	Check security of the bonnet catch. Check that the bonnet secondary catch moves freely over its whole travel and returns smartly under spring pressure.
x	x	x	Check / adjust drive belt tension, renew if necessary
x	x	x	Adjust handbrake cables, if required
x	x	x	Check handbrake security
x	x	x	Check condition of handbrake pads
x	x	x	Inspect brake pad wear and condition of discs and callipers. Replace brake pads and wear warning leads if 60% worn
-	x	-	Check wiper blade inserts. Renew if necessary
-	-	x	Renew wiper blades
-	x	x	Inspect coolant radiator and A/C condenser. Clean if required
x	x	x	Check condition and operation of all seat belts
x	x	x	Check security of exhaust system mountings and heat shields

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
x	x	x	Check brake hoses, pipes and unions
x	x	x	Check power steering pipes and unions for corrosion and mechanical defects
x	x	x	Check security and condition of fuel hoses
x	x	x	Check cooling system hoses security and condition
x	x	x	Check A/C hoses security and condition
x	x	x	Check condition and security of steering unit joints and gaiters
x	x	x	Check security and condition of suspension ball joints, gaiters and bushes
x	x	x	Check security and condition of suspension fixings
-	-	x	Check tightness of driveshaft bolts
x	x	x	Check interior rear view mirror for security and function
-	-	x	Check the condition of wheel arch liners
Every 64,000 km / 40,000 mile / 4 Years			Clean throttle butterflies

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Electrical Function Checks			
x	x	x	Check DTC's. Rectify faults if required
112,000 km / 70,000 mile			Renew spark plugs
x	x	x	Check / record battery voltage
x	x	x	Clean and grease battery connections
x	-	x	Check and if necessary adjust headlamp alignment
x	x	x	Check operation of all lamps
x	x	x	Check operation of ABS warning lamp
x	x	x	Check operation of all warning indicators
x	x	x	Check audible warnings including security system
x	x	x	Check operation of the horns
x	x	x	Check operation of the windscreen wipers
x	x	x	Check exterior rear view mirrors for security and function
x	x	x	Check service interval indicator. Reset
x	x	x	Check / operate battery disconnect switch
x	x	x	Check / operate battery connect switch

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
x	x	x	Check / operate electric windows
x	x	x	Check / operate powerfold mirrors
x	x	x	Check windscreen washers and jets
Wheels and Tyre Checks			
x	x	x	Check for correct tyre size, type and orientation
x	x	x	Check colour coded valve collars for correct location (tyre pressure monitoring)
x	x	x	Check and report tyre tread depth
x	x	x	Check tyres for uneven / excessive wear or damage
x	x	x	Check / adjust tyre pressures
x	x	x	Check torque of road wheel nuts
x	x	x	Check road wheel rims for inner and outer damage.
x	x	x	Check operation of tyre pressure sensors
x	x	x	Check 'use by' date of tyre repair kit

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Anti Corrosion Check			
-	x	x	Check body panels and underbody for corrosion starting from the inside - out (excluding stone chips).
Gear Change Modes (Automatic)			
x	x	x	Auto
x	x	x	Sport
x	x	x	Touchtronic
x	x	x	Reverse

1000mls 1500km 3 month	10000mls 16000km 12 month	20000mls 32000km 24 month	
Final Checks			
x	x	x	Degrease windscreen
x	x	x	Carry out road test - including operation of all auto gearbox modes
x	x	x	Check ABS and Traction Control operation
x	x	x	Check operation of all seat belts and buckles
x	x	x	Check that fuel filler bowl rain drain is clear

Service Record

The following service records cover the Initial 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 month service and then the regular services at 16,000 km / 10,000 mile / 12 month, which ever occurs first, intervals. Ensure that at each service the appropriate entry is stamped and signed as completed.

Vehicle Identification Number:

Date of Delivery:

If the initial free 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 month service is carried out by an Aston Martin Dealer other than the selling Dealer - Ensure that the tear off sheet is completed and returned to the selling Dealer with the invoice.

Odometer:

	YES	NO
Applicable Service Actions checked:		
Open Service Actions completed:		

Free

Dealer Stamp

Initial 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 Month Service

Signature..... Date.....

Return Slip

Odometer:

	YES	NO
Applicable Service Actions checked:		
Open Service Actions completed:		

Dealer Stamp

Initial 1,500 km / 1,000 mile / 3 Month Service

Signature..... Date.....

VIN:

ASTON MARTIN

Odometer:

Applicable Service Actions checked: YES NO

Open Service Actions completed: YES NO

Dealer Stamp

16,000 km / 10,000 mile / 12 month

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:

Applicable Service Actions checked: YES NO

Open Service Actions completed: YES NO

Dealer Stamp

32,000 km / 20,000 mile / 24 month

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:		
Applicable Service Actions checked:	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed:	YES	NO

Dealer Stamp

48,000 km / 30,000 mile / 3rd year

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:		
Applicable Service Actions checked:	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed:	YES	NO

Dealer Stamp

64,000 km / 40,000 mile / 4th year

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:		
Applicable Service Actions checked:	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed:	YES	NO

Dealer Stamp

80,000 km / 50,000 mile / 5th year

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:		
Applicable Service Actions checked	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed	YES	NO

Dealer Stamp

97,000 km / 60,000 mile / 6th year

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:		
Applicable Service Actions checked	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed	YES	NO

Dealer Stamp

113,000 km / 70,000 mile / 7th year

Signature..... Date.....

Odometer:		
Applicable Service Actions checked	YES	NO
Open Service Actions completed	YES	NO

Dealer Stamp

129,000 km / 80,000 mile / 8th year

Signature..... Date.....

Anti Corrosion Inspection

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
12 Month

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
2nd Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
3rd Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
4th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
5th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
6th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
7th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
8th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
9th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Anti Corrosion Inspection
10th Year

Signature..... Date.....

Replacement of Airbag Units

Every 10 years from the date of vehicle registration, all airbag units must be replaced. To ensure this is completed correctly and safely, this work should be carried out by your Aston Martin Dealership.

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Airbag Replacement
10 Year

Signature..... Date.....

Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners

Every 10 years from the date of vehicle registration, all seat belt pre-tensioners must be replaced. To ensure this is completed correctly and safely, this work should be carried out by your Aston Martin Dealership.

Date:

Odometer:

Dealer Stamp

Seat Belt Pre-Tensioners
Replacement
10 Year

Signature..... Date.....

Field Service Actions

Action No.	Date	Dealer

Action No.	Date	Dealer

Action No.	Date	Dealer

Service Action Recalls

Recall No.	Date	Dealer

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Assistance

Contents

European Emergency Service B.2
What To Do In An Emergency..... B.2
Vehicle Identification and Location B.2
Emergency Telephone Numbers..... B.3
Covered Vehicles B.4
Where you are Covered B.4
Benefits..... B.5
European Autoroute Restrictions..... B.7
What is not Covered B.7

European Emergency Service

As the owner of an Aston Martin vehicle you should enjoy a high standard of trouble free motoring. Should the unexpected occur however, our worldwide dealer network is there to help you. Details and contact telephone numbers are shown in the Dealer Directory.

In the UK and Europe, a special additional emergency service has been designed to provide you and your passengers with the help you need quickly and efficiently.

Your Aston Martin European Emergency Service policy documents specify the cover available which may include:

- Roadside Recovery
- Car Hire
- Home Assistance
- Vehicle Repatriation
- Vehicle Recovery
- Parts Delivery
- Garage Storage
- Customs Duty
- Hotel Accommodation
- Get You Home Costs

What To Do In An Emergency

Should assistance be required in the unlikely event of vehicle immobilisation, simply contact Aston Martin European Emergency Service using the relevant emergency telephone number from the following list. For countries not listed, use either of the U.K. numbers.

Immobilisation is defined as:

Mechanical or electrical breakdown, road traffic accident, vehicle fire or theft, loss of keys, punctures or running out of fuel.

Vehicle Identification and Location

To minimise delay, please have the following information available:

- Your name
- Aston Martin model
- The vehicle identification number (i.e. The last six digits from the VIN number label in the corner of the windscreen)
- The location of the vehicle
- Vehicle registration number and colour
- Telephone number where you can be contacted
- Description of the concern experienced

Emergency Telephone Numbers

Please call your toll-free country number when requiring assistance within your own country.

When outside you own country, call the normal toll line for assistance in your own language.

In the event of requiring emergency service, it may be beneficial to have the relevant telephone numbers entered into your telephone 'phone book'.

Toll Free Lines

For assistance when inside your Country of Residence

Normal Country of Residence	Number
U.K.	0800 777 160
Germany	0800 88 99 777
France	0800 108 000
Spain	0900 152 337
Italy	0800 017 944
Belgium	0800 14 524
Netherlands	0800 27866007
Switzerland	0800 278 666
Austria	0800 223200

Toll Lines

For assistance in your own language when outside your Country of Residence

Normal Country of Residence	Number
U.K.	00 44 208 603 9875
Germany	00 49 611 7320 304
France	00 33 1 49 93 81 68
Spain	00 34 91 452 29 42
Italy	00 39 02 26609 857
Belgium	00 32 2 773 62 66
Netherlands	00 31 20 851 2269
Switzerland	00 41 1 283 35 86
Austria	00 43 1 525 03 6568

The Aston Martin European Emergency Service is manned by multilingual staff 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. By telephoning our personnel, all arrangements will be made on your behalf, within the terms of the assistance programme.

Please do not make your own arrangements as Aston Martin European Emergency Assistance will be unable to reimburse you.

Covered Vehicles

The benefits of Aston Martin European Emergency Service are applicable to Aston Martin vehicles purchased from an Authorised Aston Martin Dealer in one of the following countries for which valid Aston Martin European Emergency Service cover has been applied; UK, Germany, France, Spain, Italy, Belgium, Netherlands, Switzerland and Austria

Where you are Covered

If you are a permanent resident in Continental Europe, you are entitled to the benefits of Aston Martin European Emergency Service whilst travelling in your covered vehicle in the countries defined below.

Should you move permanently to one of the countries defined below during the period of cover, your entitlements remain the same.

Continental Europe is defined as:

Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Croatia, Czech Republic, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Gibraltar, Greece, Hungary, Italy, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Monaco, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal (not Madeira), Republic of Ireland, Romania, San Marino, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain (including the Balearic Islands and Canary Islands), Sweden, Switzerland, Turkey (European part), and Vatican City.

The United Kingdom is defined as England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.

Benefits

Roadside Recovery and Home Assistance

In the event of vehicle immobilisation Aston Martin European Emergency Service will organise and pay for the costs of taking your Aston Martin to the nearest Aston Martin Dealership, should assistance at home or at the roadside prove unsuccessful.

Vehicle Recovery

In the event of vehicle immobilisation where your vehicle cannot be repaired within 4 working days, Aston Martin European Emergency Service will repatriate your Aston Martin to the Aston Martin Dealership nearest your planned destination or home address.

Vehicle Collection After Repair

Following repairs organised by Aston Martin European Emergency Service, the cost of a first class rail ticket or (if rail transport would normally exceed 6 hours) a business class air ticket will be met to permit you or a person you designate to collect the repaired vehicle.

Get You Home/Hotel Accommodation

Should your Aston Martin not be repaired the same day, Aston Martin European Emergency Service will organise and pay for the following:

1. First class rail transport, or, if rail transport would normally exceed 6 hours, scheduled business class air transport to enable you and your passengers to return to your homes in the country of vehicle registration or to continue your original journey.
2. A contribution towards hotel accommodation from the first day of immobilisation. The maximum payable will be £100 per person per day up to 2 days for hotel accommodation in the country of vehicle registration or up to 7 days hotel accommodation elsewhere in Continental Europe.

Car Hire

If, despite Roadside or Home Assistance, your Aston Martin cannot be repaired the same day, Aston Martin European Emergency Service will contribute towards the costs of a temporary replacement vehicle during the time your vehicle remains immobilised.

The maximum payment under this section is £200 with a limit of £100 per day in the country of registration or £400 with a limit of £100 per day elsewhere in Continental Europe. You will be required to satisfy the requirements of the vehicle hiring company.

These requirements may include:

- Production of your current valid driving license
- Taking up Collision Damage Waver (CDW) insurance, or taking up the hire vehicle liability on your own insurance, as required by the hirer
- Returning the loan car to the supplier with a full tank of fuel or paying to have the fuel tank replenished by the hirer

European Autoroute Restrictions

If assistance is required on a French Autoroute or on certain Autoroutes in other European countries, you must use the official SOS boxes at the side of the road in order to arrange initial assistance or recovery. You will be connected to the authorised Autoroute Assistance Service because these roads are privatised. Neither Aston Martin European Emergency Service or any other assistance organisation are allowed to assist on these roads.

Once your Aston Martin has been recovered from the Autoroute, you should contact Aston Martin European Emergency Service at the earliest opportunity to ensure that any further assistance arrangements you require can be made on your behalf.

Aston Martin European Emergency Service will advise you how to reclaim costs incurred for recovery from the Autoroute.

What is not Covered

Aston Martin European Emergency Service is thorough and comprehensive, however, claims cannot be met as a result of any of the following:

1. Where you, or anyone else acting on your behalf, make repair or service arrangements without authorisation (and a file number) from Aston Martin European Emergency Service.
2. Where loss, injury, damage, illness, death or legal liability have been caused by the following:
   - Your property being held, taken or destroyed or damaged under the order of any government or customs officials
   - Ionising radiation or radioactive contamination from nuclear fuel or nuclear waste or any risk from nuclear equipment
   - The radioactive toxic explosive or other hazardous properties of any explosive nuclear assembly or nuclear component thereof
3. Loss, destruction or damage directly occasioned by pressure waves caused by aircraft and other aerial devices travelling at sonic or supersonic speeds.
4. Motor racing rallies, track days, speed or duration tests or practice thereof.
5. Damage or injury intentionally caused by you or resulting from your participation in a criminal offence.

6. Loss, damage (directly or indirectly) occasioned by, or happening through or in consequence of war, invasion, acts of foreign enemies, hostilities (whether war be declared or not), civil war, rebellion, revolution, insurrection, military or usurped power, riot or civil commotion.
7. Your Aston Martin being kept in an un-roadworthy condition or not being serviced in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations.
8. Any costs that would have been payable by you, such as petrol or toll charges.
9. Release fees.

   Should your vehicle be stolen and subsequently recovered by the police, you may be asked to pay a release fee before we can remove your vehicle to an Authorised Aston Martin Dealer.
10. Specialist charges.

    In the event that the use of specialist equipment is required to provide assistance when your vehicle has, for example, left the motorway, is in a ditch, is standing on soft ground, sand, shingle, stuck in water or snow or has been immobilised by the removal of its wheels, we will arrange recovery but you will be responsible for the costs. The costs may be refundable under the terms of your motor insurance policy.
11. Adverse weather conditions.

    On those occasions when we experience adverse weather conditions, such as high winds, snow, floods, etc., external resources may be stretched and some operations become physically impossible until the weather improves. At such times, our priority is to ensure that you and your passengers are taken to a place of safety and so the recovery of your vehicle may not be possible until weather conditions permit.

12. Lockout/lost keys

Whilst we will always endeavour to provide assistance by the most practical method should you be unable to gain entry to your vehicle, modern security systems make it extremely difficult for this to be achieved should spare keys not be available. If a forced entry is required, you will be asked to sign a declaration stating that you have given permission for this to take place and that any costs for resultant damage will be your sole responsibility.

ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN
ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Warranty

Contents

Vehicle Warranty C.2
Corrosion Protection Warranty C.2
Period of Cover C.2
Who May Repair the Vehicle C.3
Wear and Tear Items C.3
What is Not Covered C.4
Customer Responsibility C.5
Warranty Coverage when Touring C.6
Extra Cover Warranties C.6
Consumer Law C.7
Owner Details C.8
Owner Warranty Transfer C.9

Vehicle Warranty

Aston Martin gives a Warranty for each new Aston Martin motorcar and each replacement car or assembly manufactured or supplied by the Company to be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service for the applicable Warranty period.

Tyres are covered separately by the tyre manufacturer. Dealers are expected to offer assistance to the customer in pursuing a claim against the tyre manufacturer.

Corrosion Protection Warranty

The vehicles bodywork is protected by an Anti-Perforation Corrosion Warranty. Should any part of the bodywork of the Aston Martin motorcar be perforated by rust corrosion, the panel(s) affected by the perforation will be repaired or replaced.

The term 'perforation' means a hole that is caused by corrosion that penetrates through a body panel from the inside.

Period of Cover

The period of cover for all types of warranty commences on the day the vehicle is handed over to the first retail customer.

The Vehicle Warranty period of cover is three years / unlimited mileage.

The Vehicle Corrosion Protection Warranty period of cover is 10 years / unlimited mileage.

Who May Repair the Vehicle

Franchise holders and / or Approved Repairers, who are appointed and receive full technical support from Aston Martin, provide facilities for the servicing and repair of Aston Martin motorcars. Only such Franchise Holders or Approved Repairs will under the terms of this warranty, repair replace or readjust, free of charge to the owner, any part or assemble proved to Aston Martins satisfaction to show a defect in materials or workmanship within the applicable period.

Wear and Tear Items

Items that are subject to wear and tear are generally divided into two categories, namely those specified for replacement or adjustment during scheduled maintenance and those that require replacement or adjustment dependent upon conditions of use.

Scheduled Maintenance Items

The items listed below are covered by the Vehicle Warranty up to the first scheduled change point that replacement or adjustment is required during scheduled maintenance operations.

- Drive Belts
- Spark Plugs
- Oil, air, pollen and fuel filters

The period of warranty cover for any item may not exceed the time and distance limitation of the vehicle warranty.

Wear and Tear Items

The items listed below are recognised as having a limited service life or are subject to wear or damage. However, these items are covered by the vehicle warranty for up to one year or the first service, which ever occurs first.

- Wiper Blades
- All Light bulbs

Xenon headlamp bulbs and instrumentation illumination bulbs are covered by the full vehicle warranty.

- Wheel alignment / balancing

- Adjustments, including but not limited to: headlamp and hinged panel adjustments, suspension tightening, steering geometry adjustments, emission / fuel systems checks and handbrake cable adjustments
- Remote handset batteries

Brake pads, brake discs and other friction related components are not covered when replacement is due to wear and tear, but they are covered against manufacturing defects for the duration of the Vehicle Warranty.

Consumables

Replacement or 'top-up' of consumable fluids, e.g. oils, antifreeze, brake fluid, windscreen wash solution and refrigerant, is only covered when they are used as part of a warranty repair.

What is Not Covered

Vehicle Warranty

Aston Martin is **not** responsible for any repair or replacement that is required as a direct result of:

- Normal wear and tear
- Failure to properly maintain the vehicle in accordance with Aston Martin's maintenance schedules and service instructions
- Failure to use Aston Martin specified parts or fluids during a warranty repair (or parts of equivalent quality during a retail repair)
- Damage resulting from neglect, accident, flooding or improper use
- Any modification of the vehicle or parts which is not authorised by Aston Martin, including any engine performance enhancement modifications
- Refilling or topping-up with incorrect fuel, e.g. diesel instead of petrol
- Use of bio-ethanol alternative fuels
- Defects caused as a result of the vehicle being used in motorsport or track events or for any other purpose other than normal private or commercial use
- Any vehicle that has had its vehicle identification number altered or removed, or on which the odometer reading has been unlawfully altered

Paint Surface and Corrosion Protection

Aston Martin is not responsible for any repair or replacement that is required as a direct result of the following:

- Failure to properly maintain paint and bodywork by regular cleaning in accordance with Aston Martin instructions
- Factors beyond Aston Martin's control, such as environmental hazards (including industrial fall-out, storm damage, acid rain) and damage (including stone chips, scratches and use of unsuitable cleaning agents)
- Accident repairs using materials or methods of repair that have not been approved by Aston Martin
- Alterations of the vehicle from Aston Martin's original specification
- Failure to rectify on a timely basis any paint or corrosion damage as recorded in the vehicle documentation by a dealer at the time of the annual inspection

Other Exclusions

The Aston Martin warranty excludes liability for any lost time, inconvenience, loss of transportation, or any other incidental or consequential damage you (or anyone else) may incur as a result of a defect covered by this warranty.

Customer Responsibility

The customer literature will describe the proper care and use of the vehicle. Proper maintenance and use guard against major repair expenses resulting from misuse, neglect or inadequate maintenance, and may help increase the value that the customer may receive when selling the vehicle.

The Customer is responsible to:

- Make sure that the vehicle is maintained in accordance with the vehicle service and maintenance guide published in the customer literature

Failure to perform maintenance promptly and in accordance with Aston Martins specified service intervals will invalidate warranty coverage on the parts affected.

- The customer is required to present the vehicle to a dealer for any warranty repairs as soon as practicable after a defect is detected

- Make sure that the Service and Maintenance schedule has been stamped by the servicing dealer after the completion of a scheduled service operation
- Ensure that paint and bodywork is maintained by regular cleaning in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions
- Ensure that the body panels are examined annually by an authorised Aston Martin Dealer and that this inspection is recorded in the Owners Guide

Warranty Coverage when Touring

Aston Martin has a comprehensive service network in most parts of the world. Any authorised Aston Martin dealer can carry out repairs under the terms of the vehicle warranty. Under normal circumstances, the customer should not be required to pay for any warranty work performed by an Aston Martin dealer.

It is the customer's responsibility to produce the warranty documentation issued with the new vehicle. This establishes the customers right to warranty coverage and the relevant maintenance and service records. If the customer is unable do so, the dealer should seek advice from Aston Martin.

Extra Cover Warranties

Aston Martin Extra Cover Warranties are specifically designed to provide the customer with first class after-sales protection from unexpected repair costs when the vehicle warranty has expired.

Contact your Aston Martin Dealer for more information on the benefits and protection provided by these Extra Cover Warranties.

Consumer Law

The Aston Martin warranties are manufacturers' warranties that supplement and do not affect your legal rights under the vehicle purchase agreement with your selling dealer or under applicable national legislation governing the sale of consumer goods.

Owner Details

Name: _____

Address: _____

_____

_____

_____

Post Code: _____

Dealer Stamp

Signature.....Date.....

If the vehicle is sold, the benefits of any un-expired portion of the warranties can be transferred to the new owner.

The new owner should complete a 'tear off' sheet (next page) and send the new details to:

Aston Martin Warranty Department
Aston Martin Lagonda Limited
Banbury Road,
Gaydon,
WARWICK
Warwickshire,
CV35 0DB,
England

Vehicle Details

Registration No.: _____

VIN No.: _____

Engine no.: _____

Warranty Start Date _____

Owner Warranty Transfer

Registration No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage: km / mile

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

Post Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature **Date**

Owner Warranty Transfer

Registration No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage: km / mile

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

Post Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature **Date**

Owner Warranty Transfer

Registration No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage: km / mile

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

Post Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature **Date**

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Owner Warranty Transfer

Registration No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage: km / mile

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

Post Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature **Date**

Owner Warranty Transfer

Registration No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage: km / mile

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

Post Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature **Date**

Owner Warranty Transfer

Registration No.:

VIN No.:

Recorded mileage: km / mile

Date of Purchase:

Name:

Address:

Post Code:

Telephone No.:

Signature **Date**

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

ASTON MARTIN

Dealer Directory

Contents

Australia D.3
Austria D.4
Belgium D.4
Canada D.4
Channel Islands D.5
Denmark D.5
England D.6
France D.9
Germany D.9
Holland D.11
Hong Kong D.11
Italy D.12
Japan D.12
Middle East D.13
Monaco D.14
New Zealand D.15
Northern Ireland D.15
Norway D.15
Portugal D.16
Russia D.16
Scotland D.16
Singapore D.17
South Africa D.17
Spain D.17
Switzerland D.18
United States of America D.19
Wales D.24

This section lists all Aston Martin Dealers worldwide, where Sales and Service are provided by companies with the facilities, knowledge and factory trained personnel.

Whilst every effort is made to ensure accuracy, changes amongst holders of the Aston Martin franchise may occur. Neither Aston Martin nor any listed Importer or Dealer shall in any circumstances be held liable for any inaccuracy, or the consequences thereof.

Dealers listed here all aim to conform to Aston Martin standards of excellence in both Sales and Service. However, all cars sold as Aston Martins are required to meet local legislation requirements.

Should service be required in a country other than that in which this vehicle was originally purchased, every effort will be made to meet the owner's requirements, but the availability of certain parts may be affected by differences in vehicle and component specifications. If the nearest Aston Martin Dealer is unable to help, contact Aston Martin directly:

Aston Martin Lagonda Limited

Banbury Road, Gaydon, WARWICK, CV35 0DB

Telephone: (+44) (0)1926 644644

Facsimile: (+44) (0)1926 644733

Web Site: www.astonmartin.com

E-Mail: enquiries@astonmartin.com

Aston Martin Dealers are independent traders, they are not the Company's Agents, and therefore have no authority to bind the Company or to enter into any financial or other commitments on the Company's behalf.

Only Aston Martin Dealers are authorised to carry out warranty work.

Australia

Adelaide

Solitaire Aston Martin

32 Belair Rd., Hawthorn, Adelaide, SA 5062

Telephone: (+61) 8 8272 8155
Facsimile: (+61) 8 8373 0703
Web Site: www.solitaireauto.com.au
E-Mail:

Perth

Barbagallo Aston Martin

354 Scarborough Beach Rd., Osborne Park, Perth, WA 6017

Telephone: (+61) 8 9231 5999
Facsimile: (+61) 8 9242 3717
Web Site: www.barbagallo.com.au
E-Mail: astonmartin@barbagallo.com.au

Queensland

Sunshine Aston Martin

179 Nerang Road, Southport, Queensland, 4215

Telephone: (+61) 7 5532 1833
Facsimile: (+61) 7 5532 3361
Web Site: www.sunshineastonmartin.com.au
E-Mail: sales@sunshineastonmartin.com.au

Sydney

Trivett Classic Garage Pty. Ltd.

32–38 Yurong St., East Sydney, NSW 2010

Telephone: (+61) 2 8338 3993
Facsimile: (+61) 2 8338 2169
Web Site: www.astonmartinsydney.com.au
E-Mail: astonmartin@trivett.com.au

Victoria

Trivett Classic Aston Martin Melbourne

80 City Road, Southbank, Victoria 3006

Telephone: (+61) 3 8866 3111
Facsimile: (+61) 3 8866 3100
Web Site: www.astonmartinmelbourne.com.au
E-Mail: astonmartin@trivett.com.au

ASTON MARTIN

Austria

Salzburg

Aston Martin Salzburg

Wasserfeldstraße 17a, 5020 Salzburg

Telephone: (+43) 662 887 8820
Facsimile: (+43) 662 887 882 88
Web Site: www.astonmartin.at
E-Mail: salzburg@astonmartin.at

Vienna

Aston Martin Wien

Motorcity SCS, Autoallee 7, 2334 Vosendorf b. Wien

Telephone: (+43) 1 698 1200–0
Facsimile: (+43) 1 698 1200–88
Web Site: www.astonmartin.at
E-Mail: wien@astonmartin.at

Belgium

Antwerp

Aston Martin Antwerp

Autolei 322, 2160 Wommelgem

Telephone: (+32) (0) 3 354 3856
Facsimile: (+32) (0) 3 354 5867
Web Site: www.astonmartin-antwerp.com
E-Mail: info@astonmartin-antwerp.com

Brussels

Aston Martin Brussels NV-SA

Borrestraat 23, St. Stevens-Woluwe, 1932

Telephone: (+32) (0) 2720 4345
Facsimile: (+32) (0) 2720 8474
Web Site: www.astonmartin-brussels.com
E-Mail: info@astonmartin-brussels.com

Canada

British Columbia

MCL Motor Cars (1992) Inc.

1730 Burrard St., Vancouver, British Columbia, V6J 3G7

Telephone: (+1) 604 738 5577
Facsimile: (+1) 604 738 7677
Web Site: www.mclmotorcars.com
E-Mail: sales@mclmotorcars.com

Ontario

Aston Martin of Ontario

740 Dupont St., Toronto, Ontario, M6G 1Z6

Telephone: (+1) 416 530 1880
Facsimile: (+1) 416 530 4495
Web Site: www.grandtouringautos.com
E-Mail: sales@grandtouringautos.com

Quebec

Decarie Motors

8255 Rue Bougainville, Montreal, Quebec, H4P 2T3

Telephone: (+1) 514 334 9910
Facsimile: (+1) 514 336 0548
Web Site: www.decarie.com
E-Mail: astonmartin@decarie.com

Channel Islands

Jersey

Jacksons (CI) Ltd.

La Rue Fondon, St. Peter, Jersey, JE3 7BF

Telephone: (+44) (0) 1534 497777
Facsimile: (+44) (0) 1534 497729
Web Site: www.jacksonsci.com
E-Mail: info@jacksons.je

Denmark

Copenhagen

Aston Martin Denmark

Bryggervangen 39, PO 2630, DK–2100, Copenhagen Ø

Telephone: (+45) 369 00 945
Facsimile: (+45) 392 72 250
Web Site: www.aston-martin.dk
E-Mail: hsw@astonmartin.dk

England

Berkshire

Lancaster Reading

Bennet Rd., Reading, Berkshire, RG2 0QX

Telephone: (+44) (0)118 9658500
Facsimile: (+44) (0)118 9658501
Web Site: www.lancasterplc.com/reading/astonmartin
E-Mail: astonmartin@reading.jardinemotors.co.uk

Buckinghamshire

Aston Martin Lagonda Limited

Works Service, Tickford St., Newport Pagnell, MK16 9AN

Telephone: (+44) (0)1908 619264
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1908 216439
Web Site: www.astonmartin.com
E-Mail: service2@astonmartin.com

Stratstone of Amersham

44 Woodside Rd., Amersham, Buckinghamshire, HP6 6AJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1494 788360
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1494 788379
Web Site: www.stratstone.com
E-Mail: amershamastonmartin@stratstone.com

Cambridgeshire

Lancaster Cambridge

High St., Harston, Cambridge, CB2 7TN

Telephone: (+44) (0)870 410 3848
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1223 875675
Web Site: www.lancasterplc.com/cambridge/astonmartin
E-Mail: astonmartin@cambridge.jardinemotors.co.uk

Cheshire

Stratstone of Wilmslow

Water Lane, Wilmslow, SK9 5BQ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1625 548802
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1625 526873
Web Site: www.stratstone.co.uk
E-Mail: wilmslowastonmartin@stratstone.com

Derbyshire

Stratstone Aston Martin Derby

Sir Frank Whittle Rd., Derby, DE21 4LT

Telephone: (+44) (0)1332 258787
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1332 258799
Web Site: www.astonsales.com
E-Mail: derbyastonmartin@stratstone.com

Devon

Grange of Exeter

Yeoford Way, Exeter, EX2 8LB

Telephone: (+44) (0)1392 678044
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1392 678048
Web Site: www.summitmotors.co.uk
E-Mail: aston.exeter@summitautogroup.co.uk

Essex

Grange Aston Martin

2 Brook St., Brentwood, CM14 5LU

Telephone: (+44) (0)1277 249555
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1277 249556
Web Site: www.summitmotors.co.uk
E-Mail: GrangeAstonMartin.Brentwood@summitautogroup.co.uk

Gloucestershire

Broughtons Aston Martin

Rutherford Way, Cheltenham, GL51 9SQ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1242 232667
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1242 232668
Web Site: www.broughtons.co.uk
E-Mail: info@broughtonsastonmartin.co.uk

Hertfordshire

Grange of Welwyn

Great North Rd., Stanborough, Welwyn Garden City AL8 7TQ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1707 280868
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1707 273150
Web Site: www.summitmotors.co.uk
E-Mail:

Kent

Lancaster Sevenoaks

114–115 London Rd., Sevenoaks, TN13 2DN

Telephone: (+44) (0)870 413 7316
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1732 456566
Web Site: www.lancasterplc.com/sevenoaks/astonmartin
E-Mail: astonmartin@sevenoaks.jardinemotors.co.uk

London

Stratstone of Mayfair

Brook House, Park Lane, London, W1K 7AJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)20 7235 8888
Facsimile: (+44) (0)20 7629 5376
Web Site: www.stratstone.com
E-Mail: mayfairastonmartin@stratstone.com

Norfolk

Stratton Motor Company (Norfolk) Limited

Ipswich Rd., Long Stratton, Norwich, NR15 2XJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)1508 530491
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1508 531670
Web Site: www.strattonmotorcompany.com
E-Mail: astonsales@strattonmotorcompany.com

Surrey

HWM Aston Martin

New Zealand Ave., Walton on Thames, KT12 1AT

Telephone: (+44) (0)1932 240611
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1932 225440
Web Site: www.hwm.co.uk
E-Mail: sales@hwm.co.uk

Tyne and Wear

Stratstone Tyne and Wear

Stoneygate, Houghton le Spring, Tyne and Wear, DH4 4NJ

Telephone: (+44) (0)191 512 3500
Facsimile: (+44) (0)191 512 3509
Web Site: www.stratstone.co.uk
E-Mail:

West Midlands

Stratstone Aston Martin Birmingham

Monaco House, Bristol St., Birmingham, B5 7AU

Telephone: (+44) (0)121 666 6550
Facsimile: (+44) (0)121 666 7052
Web Site: www.stratstone.com
E-Mail: birminghamastonmartin@stratstone.com

West Sussex

Harwoods Aston Martin

Terminus Rd., Chichester, PO19 8TX

Telephone: (+44) (0)1243 836500
Facsimile: (+44) (0)1243 836525
Web Site: www.harwoods.uk.com/astonmartin
E-Mail: infoasm@harwoods.uk.com

West Yorkshire

JCT 600 Aston Martin Brooklands

Ring Road, Lower Wortley, Leeds, LS12 6AA

Telephone: (+44) (0)113 3890777
Facsimile: (+44) (0)113 3890778
Web Site: www.jct600.co.uk
E-Mail: astonmartin.sales@jct600.co.uk

France

Cannes

Royal Motors Cannes

1390 Ave. du Campon, 06110 Cannes

Telephone: (+33) 4 93 94 84 84
Facsimile: (+33) 4 92 18 16 01
Web Site:
E-Mail: commercial@royal-motor.com

Paris

Auto Performance Paris

25 Ave. Franklin D Roosevelt, 75008, Paris

Telephone: (+33) 1 40 75 20 85
Facsimile: (+33) 1 40 75 20 86
Web Site: www.astonmartinparis.com
E-Mail: contact@astonmartinparis.com

Germany

Aachen

L. Hauswirth Exclusive Cars GMBH

Europaplatz, 52068 Aachen

Telephone: (+49) 241 16604 0
Facsimile: (+49) 241 16604 41
Web Site: www.astonmartin-aachen.de
E-Mail: info@astonmartin-aachen.de

Berlin

Krauthahn Berlin

Nestorstraße 27–29, 10709 Berlin

Telephone: (+49) 30 89 60 000
Facsimile: (+49) 30 89 31 667
Web Site: www.krauthahn-berlin.de
E-Mail: service@krauthahn-berlin.de

Bremen

Tamsen GMBH

Hauptstraße 55 (B 51), 28816 Stuhr, Bremen

Telephone: (+49) 421 80 95 80
Facsimile: (+49) 421 80 95 840
Web Site: www.tamsen.de
E-Mail: info@tamsen.de

Cologne

Royal Motors Kempen GMBH

Raderthalgürtel 2, 50968 Cologne

Telephone: (+49) 2 21 9347 800
Facsimile: (+49) 2 21 3804 88
Web Site: www.astonmartin-koeln.de
E-Mail: info@astonmartin.koeln.de

Dortmund

Aston Martin Dortmund

Hannoversche Straße 44, 44143 Dortmund

Telephone: (+49) 231 91 20 4067
Facsimile: (+49) 231 91 20 4049
Web Site: www.premiumcars-peters.de
E-Mail:

Dusseldorf

Aston Martin Dussedorf

Willstatterstr. 45, 40549 Dusseldorf

Telephone: (+49) 211 9446 01
Facsimile: (+49) 211 9446 1730
Web Site: www.moll.de
E-Mail:

Hamburg

Tamsen GMBH

Merkurring 2, 22143 Hamburg

Telephone: (+49) 405 700 3000
Facsimile: (+49) 405 700 3040
Web Site: www.tamsen.de
E-Mail: info@tamsen.de

Dresden

Thomas Exclusive Cars GMBH

Meissner Straße 34, 01445 Radebeul

Telephone: (+49) 351 404 6420
Facsimile: (+49) 351 404 6410
Web Site: www.astonmartin-dresden.de
E-Mail: info@astonmartin-dresden.de

Frankfurt

Aston Martin Kronberg

Frankfurter Straße, 61476 Kronberg T/S, Frankfurt

Telephone: (+49) 6173 999680
Facsimile: (+49) 6173 64873
Web Site: www.astonmartin-kronberg.de
E-Mail:

Mannheim

Kroymans Autohaus Mannheim GMBH

Saarburger Ring 19–21, 68229 Mannheim

Telephone: (+49) 621 48380–0
Facsimile: (+49) 621 48380–99
Web Site: www.kroymans-mannheim.de
E-Mail:

Munich

Aston Martin Munich

Odeonsplatz 2, 80539 Munich

Telephone: (+49) 89 2870 120
Facsimile: (+49) 89 2870 1222
Web Site: www.astonmartin-muenchen.de
E-Mail: astonmartin.muenchen@autohaus-avalon.de

Stuttgart

Schwabengarage AG

Cannstatter Straße 46, 70190 Stuttgart

Telephone: (+49) 711 2803 3600
Facsimile: (+49) 711 2803 3615
Web Site: www.schwabengarage.de
E-Mail:

Holland

Eindhoven

Cito Motors B.V.

Huizingalaan 66, 5628 CM Eindhoven

Telephone: (+31) 40 29 01 110
Facsimile: (+31) 40 24 14 956
Web Site: www.aston-martin.nl
E-Mail: info@astonmartineindhoven.nl

Hilversum

Kroymans Aston Martin B.V.

Soestdijkerstraatweg 66, 1213 XE Hilversum

Telephone: (+31) 35 646 2230
Facsimile: (+31) 35 683 5646
Web Site: www.astonmartin.nl
E-Mail: info@astonmartin.nl

Hong Kong

Aston Martin (HK) Ltd.

24/F Caroline Centre, 28 Yun Ping Road, Hong Kong

Telephone: (+852) 2366 2017
Facsimile: (+852) 2191 9117
Web Site:
E-Mail:

ASTON MARTIN

Italy

Bologna

EmilianAuto Spa.

Via de Carracci 6, 40131 Bologna

Telephone: (+39) 0 51 638 2111
Facsimile: (+39) 0 51 638 2202
Web Site: www.astonmartinbologna.it
E-Mail: info@astonmartinbologna.it

Milano

Aston Martin Milano S.R.L.

Via Monte Rosa, 91, 20149 Milano

Telephone: (+39) 02 43510988
Facsimile: (+39) 02 42511652
Web Site: www.astonmartinmilano.it
E-Mail: info@astonmartinmilano.it

Padova

Aston Martin Padova S.R.L.

Via Nona Strada, 23/L, 35129 Padova

Telephone: (+39) 049 807 9516
Facsimile: (+39) 049 807 9464
Web Site: www.astonmartinpadova.it
E-Mail: info@astonmartinpadova.it

Rome

Aston Martin Rome

Via F. Siacci 44, 00197 Rome

Telephone: (+39) 06808 2487
Facsimile: (+39) 06808 2415
Web Site: www.astonmartinroma.it
E-Mail: info@astonmartinroma.it

Japan

Nagoya

Aston Martin Nagoya

2–44–20 Shinsakae, Naka-ku, Nagoya 460–0007

Telephone: (+81) (0)52 242 0888
Facsimile: (+81) (0)52 242 0878
Web Site: www.astonmartin-nagoya.co.jp
E-Mail: admin@astonmartin-nagoya.com

Osaka

Aston Martin Osaka Hakko

1–19–1 Kitahorie, Nishi-ku, Osaka 550–0014

Telephone: (+81) (0)6 6531 0078
Facsimile: (+81) (0)6 6531 0118
Web Site: www.astonmartin-osaka.co.jp
E-Mail: astonmartin-osaka@hakko-group.co.jp

Tokyo

Aston Martin Akasaka

Akasaka Showroom, 4–9–25 Akasaka, Minato-ku,
Tokyo 107–0052

Telephone: (+81) (0)3 5411 2332
Facsimile: (+81) (0)3 3479 0774
Web Site: www.astonmartin-akasaka.com
E-Mail: info@astonmartin-akasaka.com

Atlantic Cars Limited

2–3–3 Azabudai, Minato-ku, Tokyo 106–0041

Telephone: (+81) (0)3 3583 8611
Facsimile: (+81) (0)3 3583 8613
Web Site: www.astonmartin.co.jp
E-Mail: atlantic_cars@astonmartin.co.jp

Middle East

Al-Khobar

Haji Hussein Alireza

King Faisal Rd., PO Box 269, Al-Khobar

Telephone: (+966) 3 858 8800
Facsimile: (+966) 3 857 6686
Web Site: www.hha.com.sa
E-Mail: contact@hha.com.sa

Bahrain

Montana Motors

PO Box 28070, Riffa

Telephone: (+973) 1 766 9999
Facsimile: (+973) 1 766 8888
Web Site: www.montanamotors.com
E-Mail: montana@batelco.com.bh

Beirut

Mana Automotive S.A.L.

Aston Martin & Land Rover Building, Chouran, Unesco,
Verdun, PO Box 11–5800, Beirut

Telephone: (+961) 1 771000
Facsimile: (+961) 1 785205
Web Site:
E-Mail: astonmartin@tewtelgroup.com

Doha

Al Hamad Automobiles

PO Box 1391, Doha

Telephone: (+974) 458 1222
Facsimile: (+974) 458 2444
Web Site:
E-Mail:

Dubai

Al Habtoor Motors Co. (LLC)

Sharjah Rd., Port Saeed Area, Dubai

Telephone: (+971) 4 264 4492
Facsimile: (+971) 4 264 4422
Web Site: www.habtoormotors.com
E-Mail:

Jeddah

Haji Hussein Alireza

PO Box 40, Jeddah 21411

Telephone: (+966) 2 642 3509
Facsimile: (+966) 2 642 6435
Web Site: www.hha.com.sa
E-Mail: contact@hha.com.sa

Kuwait

Premier International Motors Group Co Wll

PO Box 4296, Safat 13043

Telephone: (+965) 483 7344
Facsimile: (+965) 481 7488
Web Site:
E-Mail: info@astonmartin-kuwait.com

Riyadh

Haji Hussein Alireza

PO Box 87106

Telephone: (+966) 1 493 4444
Facsimile: (+966) 1 493 6443
Web Site: www.hha.com.sa
E-Mail: contact@hha.com.sa

Monaco

Monte Carlo

British Motors SAM

15 Boulevard Princesse Charlotte, 98000 Monte Carlo

Telephone: (+377) 97 978 978
Facsimile: (+377) 97 978 989
Web Site:
E-Mail: british-motors@british-motors.mc

ASTON MARTIN

New Zealand

Auckland

Independent Prestige Limited

150 Great North Rd., Grey Lynn, Auckland

Telephone: (+64) (0) 9 360 3202
Facsimile: (+64) (0) 9 361 6403
Web Site: www.astonmartin.co.nz
E-Mail: sales@iprestige.co.nz

Northern Ireland

Antrim

Charles Hurst Limited

62 Boucher Rd., Belfast, BT12 6LR

Telephone: (+44) (0) 28 9038 1721
Facsimile: (+44) (0) 28 9066 2355
Web Site: www.charleshurstgroup.co.uk
E-Mail:

Norway

Oslo

As Insignia

Sofienberggaten 35, N–0558 Oslo

Telephone: (+47) 2323 3377
Facsimile: (+47) 2323 3301
Web Site: www.insignia.no
E-Mail:

Portugal

Lisbon

AML Sport S.A. Lisboa

Rua António Enes 21 A, 1050–023 Lisbon

Telephone: (+351) 21 31 92 382

Facsimile: (+351) 21 31 92 389

Web Site:

E-Mail:

Porto

AML Sport, S.A

Rua Delfim Ferreira, 424–460, 4100–199 Porto

Telephone: (+351) 226 158 620

Facsimile: (+351) 226 158 650

Web Site:

E-Mail:

Russia

Moscow

Aston Martin Moscow

Office 1108A, 11th floor 3–D Entrance, International Trade Centre, Krasnopresnenskaya nab, Moscow 123610

Telephone: (+7) 495 258 1666 (ext. 102)

Facsimile: (+7) 495 258 1667

Web Site: www.astonmartin.ru

E-Mail:

Scotland

Lothian

Murray Motor Company

6 Bankhead Drive, Sighthill, Edinburgh, EH11 4DJ

Telephone: (+44) (0) 131 442 2800

Facsimile: (+44) (0) 131 468 7219

Web Site: www.murrayastonmartin.co.uk

E-Mail: murraymotorco@jmgroup.co.uk

Singapore

Aston Martin Lagonda (SEA) PTE Ltd.

Number 1,

Tuas Basin Link, Singapore 638755

Telephone: (+65) 6862 5868

Facsimile: (+65) 6862 5388

Web Site: www.astonmartin.com.sg

E-Mail: enquiries@astonmartin.com.sg

ASTON MARTIN

South Africa

Cape Town

Aston Martin Cape Town

The V & A Waterfront, Corner Dock Rd. and Breakwater Boulvard, Cape Town 8002

Telephone: (+27) 21 425 2007

Facsimile: (+27)

Web Site:

E-Mail: info@astonmartin.co.za

Johannesburg

Aston Martin Sandton

Sandton Isle, Corner Rivonia and Linden Rd., Sandton 2196

Telephone: (+27) 11 301 7100

Facsimile: (+27) 11 301 7101

Web Site:

E-Mail: info@astonmartin.co.za

Spain

Barcelona

Aston Martin Barcelona

Roger de Llúria, 115, 08037 Barcelona

Telephone: (+34) 93 215 21 70

Facsimile: (+34) 93 215 21 74

Web Site: www.astonmartinbcn.com

E-Mail:

Madrid

C. de Salamanca SA

Zurbano, 93–95, 28003 Madrid

Telephone: (+34) 91 554 8293

Facsimile: (+34) 91 553 5206

Web Site: www.cdesalamanca.com

E-Mail: jcsalamanca@cdesalamanca.com

Marbella

C. de Salamanca SA

Carretera de Cádiz, KM 171, San Pedro de Alcántara, 29670 Marbella

Telephone: (+34) 952 78 52 50
Facsimile: (+34) 952 78 03 66
Web Site: www.cdesalamanca.com
E-Mail: jcsalamanca@cdesalamanca.com

ASTON MARTIN

Switzerland

Geneva

Keller Motorcars

2 Rue du Grand Pré, 1202 Geneva

Telephone: (+41) 22 919 0500
Facsimile: (+41) 22 919 0509
Web Site: www.kellermotorcars.ch
E-Mail: geneve@kellermotorcars.ch

Lugano

Garage Tarcisio Pasta SA

Via Monteceneri 1, 6593 Cadenazzo

Telephone: (+41) (0) 91 850 2020
Facsimile: (+41) (0) 91 850 2021
Web Site: www.tpasta.ch
E-Mail: astonmartin@tpasta.ch

Safenwil

Emil Frey AG

Autocenter Safenwil, Industrie Nord, 5745 Safenwil

Telephone: (+41) 62 788 8888
Facsimile: (+41) 62 788 8260
Web Site: www.astonmartin.ch
E-Mail: autocenter@emilfrey.ch

Zurich

Emil Frey AG

Badenerstrasse 600, 8048 Zurich

Telephone: (+41) (0) 44 495 2515
Facsimile: (+41) (0) 44 495 2305
Web Site: www.astonmartin.ch
E-Mail: astonmartin@emilfrey.ch

United States of America

Arizona

Aston Martin Scottsdale

6825 East McDowell Rd., Scottsdale, AZ 85257

Telephone: (+1) 480 421 7240
Facsimile: (+1) 480 421 3805
Web Site: www.astonmartinscottsdale.com
E-Mail:

California

Aston Martin Marin

195 Casa Buena Drive, Corte Madera, CA 94925

Telephone: (+1) 415 496 2100
Facsimile: (+1) 415 496 2170
Web Site: www.astonmartinmarin.com
E-Mail:

Aston Martin of Beverly Hills

8833 West Olympic Boulevard, Beverly Hills, CA 90211

Telephone: (+1) 310 659 4050
Facsimile: (+1) 310 625 9656
Web Site: www.astonmartinbeverlyhills.com
E-Mail:

Aston Martin of San Diego

5202 Kearney Mesa Rd., San Diego, CA 92111

Telephone: (+1) 858 541 0200
Facsimile: (+1) 858 541 7696
Web Site: www.astonmartinofsandiego.com
E-Mail:

Aston Martin Silicon Valley

66 East Main St., Los Gatos, CA 95030

Telephone: (+1) 408 354 4000
Facsimile: (+1) 408 354 6285
Web Site: www.siliconvalleyautogroup.com
E-Mail:

Bauer Aston Martin

1455 South Auto Mall Drive, Santa Ana, CA 92705

Telephone: (+1) 714 953 4800
Facsimile: (+1) 714 953 4891
Web Site: www.bauerastonmartin.com
E-Mail: sales@bauerastonmartin.com

Cole European
2103 North Main St., Walnut Creek, CA 94596
Telephone: (+1) 925 935 2653
Facsimile: (+1) 925 935 7735
Web Site: www.coleeuropean.com
E-Mail:

Desert European
71–387 Highway 111, Rancho Mirage, CA 92270
Telephone: (+1) 760 773 5000
Facsimile: (+1) 760 773 4406
Web Site: www.deserteuropean.com
E-Mail:

Galpin Aston Martin
15500 Roscoe Boulevard, Van Nuys, CA 91406
Telephone: (+1) 818 894 3800
Facsimile: (+1) 818 922 3668
Web Site: www.galpinastonmartin.com
E-Mail:

Colorado

Sill-Terhar Aston Martin
PO Box 344, Broomfield, Denver, CO 80038
Telephone: (+1) 303 469 1801
Facsimile: (+1) 720 284 0792
Web Site: www.peopleastonmartin.com
E-Mail:

Connecticut

Miller Motorcars Inc.
275 West Putnam Ave., Greenwich, CT 06830
Telephone: (+1) 203 629 4726
Facsimile: (+1) 203 629 3418
Web Site: www.millermotorcars.com
E-Mail:

Florida

Aston Martin Naples
850 Tamiami Trail North, Naples, FL 34102
Telephone: (+1) 239 263 6070
Facsimile: (+1) 239 263 8058
Web Site: www.astonmartinnaples.com
E-Mail:

Aston Martin of Tampa Bay
320 East Fletcher Ave., Tampa, FL 33612
Telephone: (+1) 813 371 8200
Facsimile: (+1) 813 371 8199
Web Site: www.astonmartinoftampa.com
E-Mail: info@astonmartinoftampa.com

Aston Martin Palm Beach
915 South Dixie Highway, West Palm Beach, FL 33401
Telephone: (+1) 561 659 6206
Facsimile: (+1) 561 832 7176
Web Site: www.palmbeachmotorcars.com
E-Mail:

The Collection
200 Bird Rd., Coral Gables, FL 33146
Telephone: (+1) 305 444 5555
Facsimile: (+1) 305 446 4046
Web Site: www.thecollection.com
E-Mail:

Georgia

Aston Martin of Atlanta
11875 Alpharetta Highway, Roswell, GA 30076
Telephone: (+1) 678 802 5007
Facsimile: (+1) 678 802 5019
Web Site: www.astonmartinofatlanta.com
E-Mail:

Illinois

Lake Forest Sports Cars Limited
990 North Shore Drive, Lake Bluff, IL 60044
Telephone: (+1) 847 295 6560
Facsimile: (+1) 847 295 8849
Web Site: www.ifsc.com
E-Mail: sales@ifsc.com

Massachusetts

Aston Martin of New England
85 Linden St., Waltham, MA 02452
Telephone: (+1) 781 547 5959
Facsimile: (+1) 781 547 5957
Web Site: www.astonmartin-lotus.com
E-Mail: info@astonmartin-lotus.com

Michigan

Aston Martin of Troy

1767 Maplelawn, Troy, MI 48084

Telephone: (+1) 248 643 6900
Facsimile: (+1) 248 643 9261
Web Site: www.astonmartinoftroy.com
E-Mail: info@astonmartinoftroy.com

Missouri

Moore Aston Martin

14116 Manchester Rd., St. Louis, MO 63011

Telephone: (+1) 800 524 7278
Facsimile: (+1) 636 779 2024
Web Site: www.moorejaguar.com
E-Mail:

Nevada

Gaudin Aston Martin of Las Vegas

7200 West Sahara Ave., Las Vegas, NV 89117

Telephone: (+1) 702 284 7000
Facsimile: (+1) 702 221 4422
Web Site: www.jplv.net
E-Mail:

New Jersey

F.C. Kerbeck Aston Martin

100 Route 73 North, Palmyra, NJ 08065

Telephone: (+1) 856 829 8200
Facsimile: (+1) 856 829 7009
Web Site: www.fckerbeck.net
E-Mail: info@fckerbeck.net

Ray Catena Aston Martin

910 US Route 1, Edison, NJ 08817

Telephone: (+1) 732 205 9000
Facsimile: (+1) 732 205 9101
Web Site: www.raycatena.com
E-Mail:

New York

Miller Motorcars

Aston Martin Long Island Sales, 1060 Northern Blvd., Roslyn, NY 11576

Telephone: (+1) 516 478 4326
Facsimile: (+1) 516 478 4327
Web Site: www.astonmartinlongisland.com
E-Mail: srodd@millermotorcars.com

North Carolina

Foreign Cars Aston Martin

5603 Roanne Way, Greensboro, NC 27409

Telephone: (+1) 336 294 0200

Facsimile: (+1) 336 294 9109

Web Site: www.foreigncarsitalia.com

E-Mail:

Ohio

Midwestern Auto Group

6335 Perimeter Loop Rd., Dublin, OH 43017

Telephone: (+1) 614 889 2571

Facsimile: (+1) 614 793 7971

Web Site: www.midwesternastonmartin.com

E-Mail:

Pennsylvania

Bobby Rahal Aston Martin

15035 Perry Highway, Wexford, PA 15090

Telephone: (+1) 724 940 3530

Facsimile: (+1) 724 940 3430

Web Site: www.bobbyrahalastonmartin.com

E-Mail:

Texas

Aston Martin Dallas

5333 Lemmon Ave., Dallas, TX 75209

Telephone: (+1) 214 522 1007

Facsimile: (+1) 214 353 3550

Web Site: www.astonmartindallas.com

E-Mail:

Star Motor Cars

7000 Katy Rd., Houston, TX 77024

Telephone: (+1) 713 868 6800

Facsimile: (+1) 713 686 1365

Web Site: www.starmotorcarsastonmartin.com

E-Mail: amsales@starmotors.com

Virginia

Aston Martin Tysons

8545 Leesbueg Pike, Vienna, VA 22182

Telephone: (+1) 703 442 8200

Facsimile: (+1) 703 448 0232

Web Site: www.astonmartintysons.com

E-Mail:

Washington

Park Place Aston Martin

13710 Northup Way, Bellevue, WA 98005

Telephone: (+1) 425 562 1000
Facsimile: (+1) 425 649 9875
Web Site: www.parkplaceastonmartin.com
E-Mail:

Wales

South Glamorgan

Stratstone Aston Martin Cardiff

Cambria House, 156 North Rd., Cardiff, CF14 3BH

Telephone: (+44) (0) 2920 695700
Facsimile: (+44) (0) 2920 695718
Web Site: www.stratstone.com
E-Mail: cardiffastonmartin@stratstone.com

Alphabetical Index

A

Accessory Power Socket 3.25
Acknowledge messages 4.10
Air Conditioning
  Automatic Operation 7.6
  Control Switches 7.3
  Manual Operation 7.7
  Operating Tips 7.2
Alarm
  Deactivate / Activate 2.6
  Movement Sensor (Option) 2.13
  Tilt Sensor (Option) 2.13
Ambient Temperature Display 4.22
Anti Corrosion Inspection A.13
Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) 5.15
Approach Lighting 2.12
Aston Martin Assistance B.1
Aston Martin Tracking 2.2
Aston Martin Warranties C.1
Audio 8.1
  Auxiliary Functions 8.24
  Battery Protection Mode 8.4
  CD Changer Functions 8.16
  Essentials 8.2
  iPod / USB Functions 8.20
  Menus 8.5
  Radio Data System (RDS) 8.11
  Radio Functions 8.8
Automatic Transmission
  Driving (Automatic mode) 5.6
  Driving (Touchtronic Mode) 5.9
  Limp-home Mode 5.12
  Park (P) Override 5.11
  PRND Buttons 5.4
  Sport Mode 5.10
  Touchtronic Mode 5.7

B

Battery
Protection Mode 8.4
Battery Charge 11.24
Battery Disconnect Switch 11.27
Battery Maintenance 11.23
Battery Protection Mode 11.28
Bonnet - Opening / Closing 11.8
Boot Emergency Release 2.11
Brake Pad 'Bedding-in' 11.14
Brakes
Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) 5.15
Footbrake 5.14
Handbrake 5.16
Bulb Changing 11.36
Bulb Kit 11.36

C

Catalytic Converters 5.20
CD Changer Functions 8.16
Child Safety 3.18
Child Seats 3.20
Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) 3.21
Closing the Roof (Volante) 6.5
Coat Hooks 3.28
Condensation, Headlamp Units 11.36
Continental Driving (UK Only) 11.38
Controls
Centre Stack 4.10
Information / Warning Lamps 4.6
Instrument Cluster 4.4
Stalk Controls 4.16

Convertible Roof (Volante)
Cleaning 11.42
Closing the Roof 6.5
Deployable Rollbars 3.22, 6.9
Manual Operation 6.5
Opening the Roof 6.4
Reproofs 11.43
Roof Operation 6.2
Wind Deflector 6.10
Convertible Roof Fabric Cleaning (Volante) 11.42
Cruise Control 4.20
Cup Holder 3.23

D

Dangerous Substances 11.5
Data Recording 1.8
Day Time Running Lamps 4.17
Deadlocking 2.12
Dealer Directory D.1
Defrosting / Demisting
  Automatic 7.6
  Manual 7.7
Deployable Rollbars (Volante) 3.22, 6.9
Door Mirrors 3.8
  Auto Fold 3.9
  Memory Mirrors 3.9
  Power Fold 3.9
Door Window Reset 11.40
Drive-Away Locking 2.12
Driving
  Manual Transmission 5.13
  Safety 5.2
Driving Techniques 5.23
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) 5.17

E

Electric Windows 3.26
Emergency - What To Do B.2
Emergency Items
  First Aid Kit (Option) 11.6
  Tyre Sealant Kit 11.6
  Warning Triangle 11.6
Emergency Telephone Numbers B.3
Emission Warranty 11.3
Emotion Control Unit (Vehicle Key) 2.3

F

Fog Lamp Switch 4.12
Footbrake 5.14
Fuel
  Catalytic Converters 5.20
  Filler Flap Emergency Release 4.3, 4.18
Fuel Filler Cap 5.19
Fuel Gauge 4.4
Fuses 11.32

G

Garage Door Opener (Option) 2.15
  Operation 2.18
  Programming 2.17
  Reprogramming a Single HomeLink® Button 2.20
  Rolling Code Synchronisation 2.18
Gear Position Indicator Display 4.4

H

Handbrake 5.16
Hands-Free Phone
  Connecting a Phone 9.6
  Functions 9.2
  Making Calls 9.11
  Receiving Calls 9.12
  Removing a Phone 9.10
Hazard Warning Lamps 4.11
Headlamp Condensation 11.36
Headlamp Levelling 5.25
Heated Rear Window Switch 7.4
Homesafe 2.13
Horn 4.18

I

Ignition Control 4.10, 4.12
Interior Mirrors
  Automatic Dimming 3.8
  Automatic Dip 3.8
  Vanity 3.8
Interior Storage 3.23
iPod / USB Functions 8.20
iPod / USB Ports 3.24

L

Leaving the Boot Open While the Vehicle is Locked 2.11
Levels
  Brake Fluid 11.12
  Engine Coolant 11.13
  Engine Oil 11.11
  Power Steering Fluid 11.13
  Washer Fluid 11.10
Lights On Warning 4.17
Limp-home Mode 5.12
Locking the Vehicle 2.8
Low Outside Temperature Warning 4.9

M

Maintenance 11.7
  Bulb Changing 11.36
  Fluid Levels 11.10
  Vehicle Jacking 11.3
Maintenance Items
  Battery Conditioner 11.8
  Bulb Kit 11.36
  Tool Kit 11.7
Maximum Engine Speed 5.11

Media Devices 3.24
Memory Mirrors 3.9
Memory Seats 3.5
Emergency Stop 3.7
Message Display (Left) 4.4
Mirrors 3.8
Door 3.8

O

Opening the Roof (Volante) 6.4
Owner Maintenance 11.7

P

Park (P) Override 5.11
Parking Assist
Front and Rear (Option) 5.21
Rear 5.20
Passive Anti-Theft System 2.14
Personalisation. Security, ... 2.20
PRND Buttons 5.4

Q

Quick Reference Guide 1.6

R

Radio Functions 8.8
Reading Lamps 3.27
Registration Plate Lamps 11.38
Replacement of Airbag Units Record A.16
Replacement of Seat Belt Pre-tensioners Record A.16
Restraints System 3.10
Child Safety 3.18
Determining if the System is Operational 3.12
Seat Belts 3.12
Rollbars (Volante) 3.22, 6.9
Roof Operation (Volante) 6.2

S

Safety Defects - Reporting 1.8
Satellite Navigation
Advanced Mode 10.17
Advanced Mode Settings 10.8
Demo 10.12
Easy Mode 10.13
Easy Mode Settings 10.8
Getting Started 10.4
Map Updates 10.12
System Controls 10.3
Seat Adjustment
Sport Seat 3.4
Seat Back Release 3.5
Seat Belts 3.12
Care and Maintenance 11.44
Child Restraints 3.15

Seat Controls 3.2
Service Periods A.4
Service Record A.9
Service Schedules A.4
Servicing Precautions 11.4
Specifications
Brakes 12.5
Engine 12.2
Exterior Features 12.13
Interior Features 12.12
Performance 12.2
Recommended Fluids 12.13
Steering 12.5
Suspension 12.5
Weights 12.8
Wheel Nut Torque 12.6
Wheels and Tyres 12.6
Sport Mode (Automatic Only)
Status 4.4
Starting the Engine 5.2
Steering Wheel Adjustment 3.7
Storage 3.23
Supplemental Restraints System (SRS) 3.16
System Controls 10.3

T

Tachometer 4.6
Touchtronic Mode 5.7
Towing 11.22
Traction Control 5.18
Transmission Control Switches 4.10
Trip Computer 4.18
Trip Meter 4.4
Tyre Pressure Monitoring 4.23
Tyre Sealant Kit 11.6, 11.18

U

Umbrella 3.28
Unlocking the Vehicle 2.6
Unnecessary Battery Drain 4.15

V

Vanity Mirror 3.8
Vehicle Identification 1.7
Vehicle Key (Emotion Control Unit) 2.3
Vehicle Provenance 1.9
Vehicle Storage 11.44

W

Warning Triangle 11.6
What To Do In An Emergency B.2
Wheel Nut Torque 12.6
Wind Deflector (Volante) 6.10
Windscreen Blade Replacement 11.14
Winter Wheels 12.6
Wipers 4.16